

PCT

WORLD INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY ORGANIZATION
International Bureau



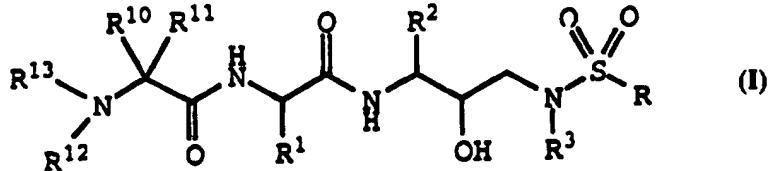
INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

(51) International Patent Classification 6 : C07K 5/062, A61K 38/55		A1	(11) International Publication Number: WO 96/28464 (43) International Publication Date: 19 September 1996 (19.09.96)
(21) International Application Number:	PCT/US96/02685		
(22) International Filing Date:	7 March 1996 (07.03.96)		
(30) Priority Data:			Court, Des Peres, MO 63131 (US). DEVADAS, Balekudru [IN/US]; 2175 Parasol Drive, Chesterfield, MO 63017 (US). NAGARAJAN, Srinivasan [IN/US]; 16209 Forest Meadows Drive, Chesterfield, MO 63017 (US). BROWN, David, L. [US/US]; 15504 Twingate, Chesterfield, MO 63017 (US). MCDONALD, Joseph, J. [US/US]; 1036 Johanna Drive, Ballwin, MO 63021 (US).
08/402,450	10 March 1995 (10.03.95)	US	
08/479,071	7 June 1995 (07.06.95)	US	
(60) Parent Application or Grant			(74) Agents: KEANE, J., Timothy et al.; G.D. Searle & Co., Corporate Patent Dept., P.O. Box 5110, Chicago, IL 60680-5110 (US).
(63) Related by Continuation			
US	08/402,450 (CIP)		
Filed on	10 March 1995 (10.03.95)		
(71) Applicant (for all designated States except US):	G.D. SEARLE & CO. [US/US]; Corporate Patent Dept., P.O. Box 5110, Chicago, IL 60680-5110 (US).		
(72) Inventors; and			
(75) Inventors/Applicants (for US only):	GETMAN, Daniel, P. [US/US]; 66 Sunny Hill Court, Chesterfield, MO 63017 (US). DESCRESLENZO, Gary, A. [US/US]; 536 Schrader Farm Drive, St. Peter, MO 63376 (US). FRESKOS, John, N. [US/US]; 7572 York, Clayton, MO 63105 (US). VASQUEZ, Michael, L. [US/US]; 233 Saratoga Court, Gurnee, IL 60031 (US). SIKORSKI, James, A. [US/US]; 2313 East Royal		(81) Designated States: AL, AM, AT, AU, AZ, BB, BG, BR, BY, CA, CH, CN, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, GB, GE, HU, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, NO, NZ, PL, PT, RO, RU, SD, SE, SG, SI, SK, TJ, TM, TR, TT, UA, UG, US, UZ, VN, ARIPO patent (KE, LS, MW, SD, SZ, UG), Eurasian patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European patent (AT, BE, CH, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).

(54) Title: BIS-AMINO ACID HYDROXYETHYLAMINO SULFONAMIDE RETROVIRAL PROTEASE INHIBITORS

(57) Abstract

Selected bis-amino acid hydroxyethylamino sulfonamide compounds of formula (I) are effective as retroviral protease inhibitors, and in particular as inhibitors of HIV protease. The present invention relates to such retroviral protease inhibitors and, more particularly, relates to selected novel compounds, composition and method for inhibiting retroviral proteases, such as human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) protease, prophylactically preventing retroviral infection or the spread of a retrovirus, and the treatment of a retroviral infection.



BEST AVAILABLE COPY

FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

AM	Armenia	GB	United Kingdom	MW	Malawi
AT	Austria	GE	Georgia	MX	Mexico
AU	Australia	GN	Guinea	NE	Niger
BB	Barbados	GR	Greece	NL	Netherlands
BE	Belgium	HU	Hungary	NO	Norway
BF	Burkina Faso	IE	Ireland	NZ	New Zealand
BG	Bulgaria	IT	Italy	PL	Poland
BJ	Benin	JP	Japan	PT	Portugal
BR	Brazil	KE	Kenya	RO	Romania
BY	Belarus	KG	Kyrgyzstan	RU	Russian Federation
CA	Canada	KP	Democratic People's Republic of Korea	SD	Sudan
CF	Central African Republic	KR	Republic of Korea	SE	Sweden
CG	Congo	KZ	Kazakhstan	SG	Singapore
CH	Switzerland	LI	Liechtenstein	SI	Slovenia
CI	Côte d'Ivoire	LK	Sri Lanka	SK	Slovakia
CM	Cameroon	LR	Liberia	SN	Senegal
CN	China	LT	Lithuania	SZ	Swaziland
CS	Czechoslovakia	LU	Luxembourg	TD	Chad
CZ	Czech Republic	LV	Latvia	TG	Togo
DE	Germany	MC	Monaco	TJ	Tajikistan
DK	Denmark	MD	Republic of Moldova	TT	Trinidad and Tobago
EE	Estonia	MG	Madagascar	UA	Ukraine
ES	Spain	ML	Mali	UG	Uganda
FI	Finland	MN	Mongolia	US	United States of America
FR	France	MR	Mauritania	UZ	Uzbekistan
GA	Gabon			VN	Viet Nam

BIS-AMINO ACID HYDROXYETHYLAMINO
SULFONAMIDE RETROVIRAL PROTEASE INHIBITORS

RELATED CASE

5 This is a continuation-in-part of co-owned and co-pending application Serial No. 08/402,450, filed March 10, 1995 which is referenced herein in its entirety.

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

10 The present invention relates to retroviral protease inhibitors and, more particularly, relates to novel compounds, composition and method for inhibiting retroviral proteases, such as human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) protease. This invention, in particular, relates to bis-amino acid hydroxyethylamine sulfonamide protease inhibitor compounds, composition and method for inhibiting retroviral proteases, prophylactically preventing retroviral infection or the spread of a retrovirus, and treatment of a retroviral infection, e.g., an HIV infection. The subject invention also relates to processes for making such compounds as well as to intermediates useful in such processes.

25 During the replication cycle or gene transcription products are translated as proteins. These proteins are subsequently processed by a virally encoded protease (or proteinase) to yield viral enzymes and structural proteins of the virus core. Most commonly, the gag precursor proteins are processed into the core proteins and the pol precursor proteins are processed into the viral enzymes, e.g., reverse transcriptase and retroviral protease. It has been shown that correct processing of the precursor proteins by the retroviral protease is necessary for assembly of infectious virions. For example, it has been shown that frameshift mutations in the protease region of the pol gene of HIV prevents

processing of the gag precursor protein. It has also been shown through site-directed mutagenesis of an aspartic acid residue in the HIV protease active site that processing of the gag precursor protein is prevented. Thus, attempts have been made to inhibit viral replication by inhibiting the action of retroviral proteases.

Retroviral protease inhibition typically involves a transition-state mimetic whereby the retroviral protease is exposed to a mimetic compound which binds (typically in a reversible manner) to the enzyme in competition with the gag and gag-pol proteins to thereby inhibit specific processing of structural proteins and the release of retroviral protease itself. In this manner, retroviral replication proteases can be effectively inhibited.

Several classes of compounds have been proposed, particularly for inhibition of proteases, such as for inhibition of HIV protease. Such compounds include hydroxyethylamine isosteres and reduced amide isosteres. See, for example, EP 0 346 847; EP 0 342,541; Roberts et al, "Rational Design of Peptide-Based Proteinase Inhibitors," Science, 248, 358 (1990); and Erickson et al, "Design Activity, and 2.8Å Crystal Structure of a C₂ Symmetric Inhibitor Complexed to HIV-1 Protease," Science, 249, 527 (1990). US 5,157,041, WO 94/04491, WO 94/04492, WO 94/04493, WO 94/05639, WO 92/08701 and US Patent Application Serial No. 08/294,468, filed August 30, 1994, (each of which is incorporated herein by reference in its entirety) for example describe hydroxyethylamine, hydroxyethylurea or hydroxyethyl sulfonamide isostere containing retroviral protease inhibitors.

35

Several classes of compounds are known to be useful as inhibitors of the proteolytic enzyme renin. See, for example, U.S. No. 4,599,198; U.K. 2,184,730; G.B.

2,209,752; EP O 264 795; G.B. 2,200,115 and U.S. SIR H725. Of these, G.B. 2,200,115, GB 2,209,752, EP O 264,795, U.S. SIR H725 and U.S. 4,599,198 disclose urea-containing hydroxyethylamine renin inhibitors. EP 468 5 641 discloses renin inhibitors and intermediates for the preparation of the inhibitors, which include sulfonamide-containing hydroxyethylamine compounds, such as 3-(t-butoxycarbonyl)amino-cyclohexyl-1-(phenylsulfonyl)amino-2(5)-butanol. G.B. 2,200,115 also discloses sulfamoyl-10 containing hydroxyethylamine renin inhibitors, and EP 0264 795 discloses certain sulfonamide-containing hydroxyethylamine renin inhibitors. However, it is known that, although renin and HIV proteases are both classified as aspartyl proteases, compounds which are 15 effective renin inhibitors generally are not predictive for effective HIV protease inhibition.

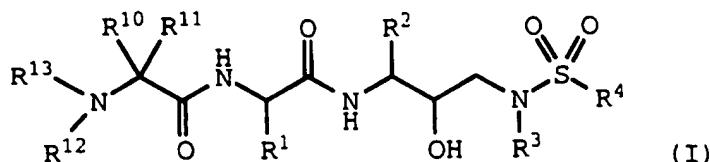
BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

The present invention relates to selected retroviral 20 protease inhibitor compounds, analogs and pharmaceutically acceptable salts, esters and prodrugs thereof. The subject compounds are characterized as bis-amino acid hydroxyethylamine sulfonamide inhibitor compounds. The invention compounds advantageously 25 inhibit retroviral proteases, such as human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) protease. Therefore, this invention also encompasses pharmaceutical compositions, methods for inhibiting retroviral proteases and methods for treatment or prophylaxis of a retroviral infection, 30 such as an HIV infection. The subject invention also relates to processes for making such compounds as well as to intermediates useful in such processes.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

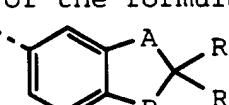
35 In accordance with the present invention, there is provided a retroviral protease inhibiting compound of the formula:

4



or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, prodrug or ester thereof, wherein

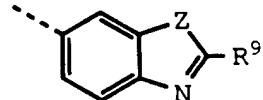
- 5 R¹ represents alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, hydroxyalkyl, alkoxyalkyl, cyanoalkyl, imidazolylmethyl, -CH₂CONH₂, -CH₂CH₂CONH₂, -CH₂S(O)₂NH₂, -CH₂SCH₃, -CH₂S(O)CH₃, -CH₂S(O)₂CH₃, -C(CH₃)₂SCH₃, -C(CH₃)₂S(O)CH₃ or -C(CH₃)₂S(O)₂CH₃ radicals; preferably, R¹ represents
- 10 alkyl of 1-5 carbon atoms, alkenyl of 2-5 carbon atoms, alkynyl of 2-5 carbon atoms, hydroxyalkyl of 1-3 carbon atoms, alkoxyalkyl of 1-3 alkyl and 1-3 alkoxy carbon atoms, cyanoalkyl of 1-3 alkyl carbon atoms, imidazolylmethyl, -CH₂CONH₂, -CH₂CH₂CONH₂, -CH₂S(O)₂NH₂, -CH₂SCH₃, -CH₂S(O)CH₃, -CH₂S(O)₂CH₃, -C(CH₃)₂SCH₃ or -C(CH₃)₂S(O)₂CH₃ radicals; more preferably, R¹ represents alkyl of 1-4 carbon atoms, alkenyl of 2-3 carbon atoms, alkynyl of 3-4 carbon atoms, cyanomethyl, imidazolylmethyl, -CH₂CONH₂, -CH₂CH₂CONH₂,
- 15 -CH₂S(O)₂NH₂, -CH₂SCH₃, -CH₂S(O)CH₃, -C(CH₃)₂SCH₃, -C(CH₃)₂S(O)CH₃ or -C(CH₃)₂S(O)₂CH₃ radicals; more preferably, R¹ represents alkyl of 1-4 carbon atoms, alkenyl of 2-3 carbon atoms, alkynyl of 3-4 carbon atoms, cyanomethyl, imidazolylmethyl, -CH₂CONH₂, -CH₂CH₂CONH₂, -CH₂S(O)₂NH₂, -CH₂SCH₃, -CH₂S(O)CH₃, -CH₂S(O)₂CH₃, -C(CH₃)₂SCH₃, -C(CH₃)₂S(O)CH₃ or -C(CH₃)₂S(O)₂CH₃ radicals; and most preferably, R¹ represents sec-butyl, tert-butyl, iso-propyl, 3-propynyl, cyanomethyl or -C(CH₃)₂S(O)₂CH₃ radicals;
- 20 R² represents alkyl, aralkyl, alkylthioalkyl, arylthioalkyl or cycloalkylalkyl radicals; preferably, R² represents radicals of alkyl of 1-5 carbon atoms, aralkyl of 1-3 alkyl carbon atoms, alkylthioalkyl of 1-3 alkyl carbon atoms, arylthioalkyl of 1-3 alkyl carbon atoms or cycloalkylalkyl of 1-3 alkyl carbon atoms and 3-6 ring member carbon atoms; more preferably, R² represents radicals of alkyl of 3-5 carbon atoms, arylmethyl, alkylthioalkyl of 1-3 alkyl carbon atoms, arylthiomethyl
- 25 R³ represents alkyl, aralkyl, alkylthioalkyl, arylthioalkyl or cycloalkylalkyl radicals; preferably, R³ represents radicals of alkyl of 1-5 carbon atoms, aralkyl of 1-3 alkyl carbon atoms, alkylthioalkyl of 1-3 alkyl carbon atoms, arylthioalkyl of 1-3 alkyl carbon atoms or cycloalkylalkyl of 1-3 alkyl carbon atoms and 3-6 ring member carbon atoms; more preferably, R³ represents radicals of alkyl of 3-5 carbon atoms, arylmethyl, alkylthioalkyl of 1-3 alkyl carbon atoms, arylthiomethyl
- 30 R⁴ represents alkyl, aralkyl, alkylthioalkyl, arylthioalkyl or cycloalkylalkyl radicals; preferably, R⁴ represents radicals of alkyl of 1-5 carbon atoms, aralkyl of 1-3 alkyl carbon atoms, alkylthioalkyl of 1-3 alkyl carbon atoms, arylthioalkyl of 1-3 alkyl carbon atoms or cycloalkylalkyl of 1-3 alkyl carbon atoms and 3-6 ring member carbon atoms; more preferably, R⁴ represents radicals of alkyl of 3-5 carbon atoms, arylmethyl, alkylthioalkyl of 1-3 alkyl carbon atoms, arylthiomethyl

- or cycloalkylmethyl of 5-6 ring member carbon atoms radicals; even more preferably, R² represents isobutyl, n-butyl, CH₃SCH₂CH₂-, benzyl, phenylthiomethyl, (2-naphthylthio)methyl, 4-methoxyphenylmethyl, 4-hydroxyphenylmethyl, 4-fluorophenylmethyl or cyclohexylmethyl radicals; even more preferably, R² represents benzyl, 4-fluorophenylmethyl or cyclohexylmethyl radicals; most preferably, R² represents benzyl;
- 10 R³ represents alkyl, cycloalkyl or cycloalkylalkyl radicals; preferably, R³ represents radicals of alkyl radical of 1-5 carbon atoms, cycloalkyl of 5-8 ring members or cycloalkylmethyl radical of 3-6 ring members;
- 15 more preferably, R³ represents propyl, isoamyl, isobutyl, butyl, cyclopentylmethyl, cyclohexylmethyl, cyclohexyl or cycloheptyl radicals; more preferably R³ represents isobutyl or cyclopentylmethyl radicals;
- 20 R⁴ represents aryl, heteroaryl or heterocyclo radicals provided R¹¹ is other than a hydrogen radical and R⁴ represents heterocyclo or benzo fused heteroaryl radicals provided R¹¹ is a hydrogen radical; preferably, R⁴ represents aryl, benzo fused 5 to 6 ring member heteroaryl or benzo fused 5 to 6 ring member heterocyclo radicals provided R¹¹ is other than a hydrogen radical and R⁴ represents benzo fused 5 to 6 ring member heteroaryl or benzo fused 5 to 6 ring member heterocyclo radicals provided R¹¹ is a hydrogen radical; or
- 25 30 R⁴ represents a radical of the formula
- 
- wherein A and B each independently represent O, S, SO or SO₂; preferably, A and B each represent O;

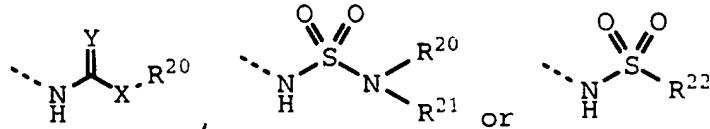
R⁶ represents deuterium, alkyl or halogen radicals; preferably, R⁶ represents deuterium, alkyl of 1-5 carbon atoms, fluoro or chloro radicals; more preferably R⁶ represents deuterium, methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl or 5 fluoro radicals;

R⁷ represents hydrogen, deuterium, alkyl or halogen radicals; preferably, R⁷ represents hydrogen, deuterium, alkyl of 1-3 carbon atoms, fluoro or chloro radicals; more 10 preferably, R⁷ represents hydrogen, deuterium, methyl or fluoro radicals; or R⁶ and R⁷ each independently represent fluoro or chloro radicals; and preferably, R⁶ and R⁷ each represent a fluoro radical; or

15 R⁴ represents a radical of the formula



wherein Z represents O, S or NH; and R⁹ represents a radical of formula



20 wherein Y represents O, S or NH; X represents a bond, O or NR²¹;

R²⁰ represents hydrogen, alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, aralkyl, heteroaralkyl, heterocycloalkyl, aminoalkyl, N-mono-25 substituted or N,N-disubstituted aminoalkyl wherein said substituents are alkyl or aralkyl radicals, carboxyalkyl, alkoxy carbonylalkyl, cyanoalkyl or hydroxyalkyl radicals; preferably, R²⁰ represents hydrogen, alkyl of 1 to 5 carbon atoms, alkenyl of 2 to 5 carbon atoms, alkynyl of 2 to 5 carbon atoms, aralkyl of 1 to 5 alkyl carbon atoms, heteroaralkyl of 5 to 6 ring members and 1 to 5 alkyl carbon atoms, heterocycloalkyl of 5 to 6 ring members and 1 to 5 alkyl carbon atoms, aminoalkyl of 2 to 5 carbon atoms, N-mono-substituted or N,N-disubstituted aminoalkyl

of 2 to 5 alkyl carbon atoms wherein said substituents are radicals of alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms, aralkyl of 1 to 3 alkyl carbon atoms radicals, carboxyalkyl of 1 to 5 carbon atoms, alkoxy carbonylalkyl of 1 to 5 alkyl carbon atoms, cyanoalkyl of 1 to 5 carbon atoms or hydroxyalkyl of 2 to 5 carbon atoms; more preferably, R²⁰ represents hydrogen, alkyl of 1 to 5 carbon atoms, phenylalkyl of 1 to 3 alkyl carbon atoms, heterocycloalkyl of 5 to 6 ring members and 1 to 3 alkyl carbon atoms, or N-mono-5 substituted or N,N-disubstituted aminoalkyl of 2 to 3 carbon atoms wherein said substituents are alkyl radicals of 1 to 3 carbon atoms; and most preferably, R²⁰ represents hydrogen, methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, isobutyl, benzyl, 2-(1-pyrrolidinyl)ethyl, 2-(1-piperidinyl)ethyl, 2-(1-piperazinyl)ethyl, 2-(4-methylpiperazin-1-yl)ethyl, 2-(1-morpholinyl)ethyl, 2-(1-thiomorpholinyl)ethyl or 2-(N,N-dimethylamino)ethyl radicals;

10 R²¹ represents hydrogen or alkyl radicals; preferably, R²¹ represents hydrogen radical or alkyl radical of 1 to 3 carbon atoms; more preferably, R²¹ represents hydrogen or methyl radicals; and most preferably, R²¹ represents a hydrogen radical; or

15 25 the radical of formula -NR²⁰R²¹ represents a heterocyclo radical; preferably, the radical of formula -NR²⁰R²¹ represents a 5 to 6 ring member heterocyclo radical; more preferably, the radical of formula -NR²⁰R²¹ represents pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, piperazinyl, 4-methylpiperazinyl, 4-benzylpiperazinyl, morpholinyl or thiomorpholinyl radicals; and

20 R²² represents alkyl or R²⁰R²¹N-alkyl radicals; preferably, R²² represents alkyl or R²⁰R²¹N-alkyl radicals wherein alkyl is 1 to 3 carbon atoms; and more preferably, R²² represents alkyl radical of 1 to 3 carbon atoms; and

preferably R⁴ represents phenyl, 2-naphthyl, 4-methoxyphenyl, 4-hydroxyphenyl, 3,4-dimethoxyphenyl, 3-aminophenyl or 4-aminophenyl radicals provided R¹¹ is
5 other than a hydrogen radical, or R⁴ represents benzothiazol-5-yl, benzothiazol-6-yl, 2-amino-benzothiazol-5-yl, 2-(methoxycarbonylamino)benzothiazol-5-yl, 2-amino-benzothiazol-6-yl, 2-(methoxycarbonylamino)benzothiazol-6-yl, 5-benzoxazolyl, 6-benzoxazolyl, 6-
10 benzopyranyl, 3,4-dihydrobenzopyran-6-yl, 7-benzopyranyl, 3,4-dihydrobenzopyran-7-yl, 2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl, benzofuran-5-yl, 1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl, 2-methyl-1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl, 2,2-dimethyl-1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl, 2,2-dideutero-1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl, 2,2-difluoro-1,3-
15 benzodioxol-5-yl, 1,4-benzodioxan-6-yl, 5-benzimidazolyl, 2-(methoxycarbonylamino)benzimidazol-5-yl, 6-quinolinyl, 7-quinolinyl, 6-isoquinolinyl or 7-isoquinolinyl radicals; more preferably, R⁴ represents phenyl, 2-naphthyl, 4-methoxyphenyl or 4-hydroxyphenyl radicals
20 provided R¹¹ is other than a hydrogen radical, or R⁴ represents benzothiazol-5-yl, benzothiazol-6-yl, benzoxazol-5-yl, 2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl, benzofuran-5-yl, 1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl, 2-methyl-1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl, 2,2-dimethyl-1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl, 2,2-dideutero-1,3-
25 benzodioxol-5-yl, 2,2-difluoro-1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl, 1,4-benzodioxan-6-yl, 2-(methoxycarbonylamino)benzothiazol-5-yl, 2-(methoxycarbonylamino)benzothiazol-6-yl or 2-(methoxycarbonylamino)benzimidazol-5-yl radicals; and most preferably, R⁴ represents phenyl, 4-methoxyphenyl or
30 4-hydroxyphenyl radicals provided R¹¹ is other than a hydrogen radical, or R⁴ represents benzothiazol-5-yl, benzothiazol-6-yl, 2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl, benzofuran-5-yl, 1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl, 2-methyl-1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl, 2,2-dimethyl-1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl, 2,2-
35 dideutero-1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl, 2,2-difluoro-1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl, 1,4-benzodioxan-6-yl, 2-(methoxycarbonylamino)benzothiazol-6-yl or 2-(methoxycarbonylamino)benzimidazol-5-yl radicals;

R¹⁰ represents hydrogen, alkyl, hydroxyalkyl or alkoxyalkyl radicals; preferably, R¹⁰ represents hydrogen, alkyl, hydroxyalkyl or alkoxyalkyl radicals,
5 wherein alkyl and alkoxy are each 1-3 carbon atoms; more preferably, R¹⁰ represents hydrogen, methyl, ethyl, propyl, hydroxymethyl, hydroxyethyl, methoxymethyl or methoxyethyl radicals; most preferably, R¹⁰ represents hydrogen, methyl or ethyl radicals;

10 R¹¹ represents hydrogen, alkyl, hydroxyalkyl, alkoxyalkyl, aralkyl, heteroaralkyl, alkylthioalkyl or the sulfone or sulfoxide derivatives thereof, -CH₂CH₂CONH₂ or -CH₂CONH₂ radicals; preferably, R¹¹
15 represents hydrogen, alkyl of 1-5 carbon atoms, hydroxyalkyl of 1-4 carbon atoms, alkoxyalkyl of 1-4 alkyl carbon atoms, benzyl, imidazolylmethyl, -CH₂CH₂CONH₂, -CH₂CONH₂, -CH₂CH₂SCH₃ or -CH₂SCH₃ radicals or the sulfone or sulfoxide derivatives thereof; more
20 preferably, R¹¹ represents hydrogen, methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, butyl, secbutyl, isobutyl, tertbutyl, hydroxymethyl, hydroxyethyl, methoxymethyl or methoxyethyl radicals; most preferably, R¹¹ represents hydrogen, methyl or ethyl radicals; and

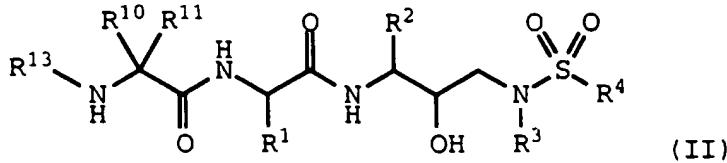
25 R¹² and R¹³ each independently represent hydrogen, alkyl, aralkyl, heteroaralkyl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkylalkyl, hydroxyalkyl, alkoxyalkyl, aryl or heteroaryl radicals; preferably, R¹² and R¹³ each independently represent
30 hydrogen, alkyl, aralkyl, heteroaralkyl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkylalkyl, hydroxyalkyl, alkoxyalkyl, aryl or heteroaryl radicals, wherein alkyl is 1-5 carbon atoms, cycloalkyl is 3-6 ring member cycloalkyl optionally benzo fused, and heteroaryl is 5 to 6 ring member heteroaryl
35 optionally benzo fused; more preferably, R¹² and R¹³ each independently represent hydrogen, alkyl of 1-5 carbon atoms, phenylalkyl of 1-3 alkyl carbon atoms, 5 to 6 ring member heteroaralkyl of 1-3 alkyl carbon atoms,

cycloalkyl of 3-6 ring members, cycloalkylmethyl of 3-6 ring members, hydroxyalkyl of 1-3 carbon atoms, methoxyalkyl of 1-3 alkyl carbon atoms or phenyl radicals; even more preferably, R₁₂ and R₁₃ each 5 independently represent hydrogen, methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, cyclohexylmethyl, benzyl, phenylethyl, 2-pyridylmethyl, 3-pyridylmethyl, 4-pyridylmethyl, 2-(2-pyridyl)ethyl, 2-(3-pyridyl)ethyl, 2-(4-pyridyl)ethyl, 10 furylmethyl, 2-furylethyl, 2-hydroxyethyl, 2-methoxyethyl or phenyl radicals; most preferably, R₁₂ represents hydrogen or methyl radicals; and most preferably, R₁₃ represents hydrogen, methyl, ethyl, propyl, cyclopropyl, isopropyl, benzyl, 2-phenylethyl, 2-pyridylmethyl, 3-pyridylmethyl, 4-pyridylmethyl, 2-(2-pyridyl)ethyl, 2-(3-pyridyl)ethyl, 2-(4-pyridyl)ethyl, furylmethyl, 15 2-furylethyl or 2-methoxyethyl radicals.

Another family of compounds of interest within 20 Formula I as defined above wherein R⁴ represents aryl, heteroaryl or heterocyclo radicals provided R¹¹ is other than hydrogen or alkyl radicals, and R⁴ represents heterocyclo or benzo fused heteroaryl radicals provided R¹¹ is a hydrogen or alkyl radical; preferably, R⁴ 25 represents aryl, benzo fused 5 to 6 ring member heteroaryl or benzo fused 5 to 6 ring member heterocyclo radicals provided R¹¹ is other than hydrogen or alkyl radicals, and R⁴ represents benzo fused 5 to 6 ring member heteroaryl or benzo fused 5 to 6 ring member 30 heterocyclo radicals provided R¹¹ is a hydrogen or alkyl radical.

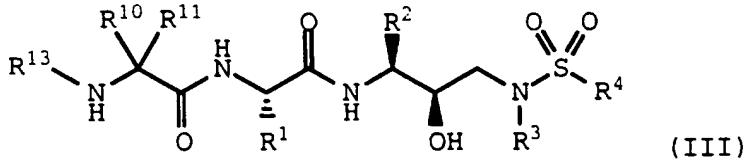
The absolute stereochemistry of the carbon atom of -CH(OH)- group is preferably (R). The absolute 35 stereochemistry of the carbon atom of -CH(R¹)- group is preferably (S). The absolute stereochemistry of the carbon atom of -CH(R²)- groups is preferably (S).

A family of compounds of particular interest within Formula I are compounds embraced by the formula



- 5 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, prodrug or ester thereof, wherein n, R¹, R², R³, R⁴, R¹⁰, R¹¹, and R¹³ are as defined above.

A family of compounds of further interest within
10 Formula II are compounds embraced by the formula



- or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, prodrug or ester thereof, wherein R¹, R², R³, R⁴, R¹⁰, R¹¹, and R¹³ are as defined above.

- 15 A more preferred family of compounds within Formula III consists of compounds or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, prodrug or ester thereof, wherein
- 20 R¹ represents sec-butyl, tert-butyl, iso-propyl, 3-propynyl, cyanomethyl or -C(CH₃)₂S(O)₂CH₃ radicals;
- R² represents a benzyl radical;
- 25 R³ represents propyl, isoamyl, isobutyl, butyl, cyclohexyl, cycloheptyl, cyclopentylmethyl or cyclohexylmethyl radicals; and
- R⁴ is as defined above;
- 30 R¹⁰ represents hydrogen, methyl, ethyl, propyl, hydroxymethyl or hydroxyethyl radicals;

R₁₁ represents hydrogen, methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, butyl, secbutyl, isobutyl, tertbutyl, hydroxymethyl, hydroxyethyl, methoxymethyl or methoxyethyl radicals; and

5

R₁₃ represents hydrogen, methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, cyclohexylmethyl, benzyl, phenylethyl, 2-pyridylmethyl, 3-pyridylmethyl, 4-pyridylmethyl, 2-(2-pyridyl)ethyl, 2-(3-pyridyl)ethyl, 2-(4-pyridyl)ethyl, furylmethyl, 2-furylethyl, 2-hydroxyethyl, 2-methoxyethyl or phenyl radicals.

15

Compounds of interest include the following:

15

2S-[(N-methylamino)acetyl]amino-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethyl-butanamide;

20

2S-[(N-methylamino)acetyl]amino-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-methyl-butanamide;

25

2S-[(N-methylamino)acetyl]amino-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-cyanopropanamide;

30

2S-[(N-methylamino)acetyl]amino-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methyl-pentanamide;

35

2S-[(N-methylamino)acetyl]amino-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-4-pentynamide;

40

2S-[(N-methylamino)acetyl]amino-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(benzofuran-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethyl-butanamide;

45

2S-[(N-methylamino)acetyl]amino-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(benzofuran-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-methyl-butanamide;

50

2S-[(N-methylamino)acetyl]amino-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(benzofuran-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-cyanopropanamide;

50

2S-[(N-methylamino)acetyl]amino-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(benzofuran-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methyl-pentanamide;

- 2S-[(N-methylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(benzofuran-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-4-pentynamide;
- 5 2S-[(N-methylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(2-methyl-1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethyl-butanamide;
- 10 2S-[(N-methylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(2-methyl-1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-methyl-butanamide;
- 15 2S-[(N-methylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(2-methyl-1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-cyanopropanamide;
- 20 2S-[(N-methylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(2-methyl-1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methyl-pentanamide;
- 25 2S-[(N-methylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-4-pentynamide;
- 30 2S-[(N-methylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-methyl-butanamide;
- 35 2S-[(N-methylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-cyanopropanamide;
- 40 2S-[(N-methylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methyl-pentanamide;
- 45 2S-[(N-methylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(benzothiazol-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-4-pentynamide;
- 50 2S-[(N-methylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(benzothiazol-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-methyl-butanamide;
- 55 2S-[(N-methylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(benzothiazol-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-cyanopropanamide;

- 2S-[[(N-methylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
[(benzothiazol-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methyl-pentanamide;
- 5 2S-[[(N-methylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
[(benzothiazol-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
(phenylmethyl)propyl]-4-pentynamide;
- 10 2S-[[(N-methylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(2,2-
difluoro-1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)
amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethyl-butanamide;
- 15 2S-[[(N-methylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(2,2-
difluoro-1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)
amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-methyl-butanamide;
- 20 2S-[[(N-methylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(2,2-
difluoro-1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)
amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-cyanopropanamide;
- 25 2S-[[(N-methylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(2,2-
difluoro-1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)
amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methyl-pentanamide;
- 30 2S-[[(N-methylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(2,2-
difluoro-1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)
amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-4-pentynamide;
- 35 2S-[[(N-methylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,4-
benzodioxan-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethyl-butanamide;
- 40 2S-[[(N-methylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,4-
benzodioxan-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-methyl-butanamide;
- 45 2S-[[(N-methylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,4-
benzodioxan-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methyl-pentanamide;
- 50 2S-[[(N,N-dimethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-
1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethyl-butanamide;
- 55 2S-[[(N,N-dimethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-
1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-methyl-butanamide;

- 2S-[[(N,N-dimethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-
1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-cyanopropanamide;
- 5 2S-[[(N,N-dimethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-
1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methyl-pentanamide;
- 10 2S-[[(N,N-dimethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-
1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-4-pentynamide;
- 15 2S-[[(N,N-dimethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
[(benzofuran-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethyl-butanamide;
- 20 2S-[[(N,N-dimethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
[(benzofuran-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-methyl-butanamide;
- 25 2S-[[(N,N-dimethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
[(benzofuran-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-cyanopropanamide;
- 30 2S-[[(N,N-dimethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
[(benzofuran-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
(phenylmethyl)propyl]-4-pentynamide;
- 35 2S-[[(N,N-dimethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
[(2-methyl-1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methyl
propyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethyl-
butanamide;
- 40 2S-[[(N,N-dimethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
[(2-methyl-1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methyl
propyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-methyl-
butanamide;
- 45 2S-[[(N,N-dimethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
[(2-methyl-1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methyl
propyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-
cyanopropanamide;
- 50 2S-[[(N,N-dimethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
[(2-methyl-1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methyl
propyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methyl-
pentanamide;
- 55 2S-[[(N,N-dimethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
[(2-methyl-1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methyl
propyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-4-pentynamide;

- 2S-[(N,N-dimethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
[(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)
amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethyl-butanamide;
- 5 2S-[(N,N-dimethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
[(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)
amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-methyl-butanamide;
- 10 2S-[(N,N-dimethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
[(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)
amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-cyanopropanamide;
- 15 2S-[(N,N-dimethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
[(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)
amino]-1S-phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methyl-pentanamide;
- 20 2S-[(N,N-dimethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
[(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)
amino]-1S-phenylmethyl)propyl]-4-pentynamide;
- 25 2S-[(N,N-dimethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
[(benzothiazol-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethyl-butanamide;
- 30 2S-[(N,N-dimethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
[(benzothiazol-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-cyanopropanamide;
- 35 2S-[(N,N-dimethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
[(benzothiazol-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methyl-pentanamide;
- 40 2S-[(N,N-dimethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
[(benzothiazol-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
(phenylmethyl)propyl]-4-pentynamide;
- 45 2S-[(N,N-dimethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
[(2,2-difluoro-1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-
methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-
dimethyl-butanamide;
- 50 2S-[(N,N-dimethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
[(2,2-difluoro-1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-
methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-methyl-
butanamide;
- 55 2S-[(N,N-dimethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
[(2,2-difluoro-1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-
methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-
cyanopropanamide;

- 2S-[[(N,N-dimethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
[(2,2-difluoro-1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-
methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methyl-
pentanamide;
- 5 2S-[[(N,N-dimethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
[(2,2-difluoro-1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-
methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-4-
pentynamide;
- 10 2S-[[(N,N-dimethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
[(1,4-benzodioxan-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-
1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethyl-butanamide;
- 15 2S-[[(N,N-dimethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
[(1,4-benzodioxan-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-
1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-methyl-butanamide;
- 20 2S-[[(N,N-dimethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
[(1,4-benzodioxan-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-
1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-cyanopropanamide;
- 25 2S-[[(N,N-dimethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
[(1,4-benzodioxan-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-
1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methyl-pentanamide;
- 30 2S-[[(N,N-dimethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
[(1,4-benzodioxan-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-
1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-4-pentynamide;
- 35 2S-[[(N-benzylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-
benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethyl-butanamide;
- 40 2S-[[(N-benzylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-
benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methyl-pentanamide;
- 45 2S-[[(N-benzylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(
phenylsulfonyl)(2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethyl-butanamide;
- 50 2S-[[(N-benzylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(
phenylsulfonyl)(2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methyl-pentanamide;
- 55 2S-[[(N-benzylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(

- (4-methoxyphenyl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethyl-butanamide;
- 5 2S-[[[(N-benzylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(4-methoxyphenyl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-methyl-butanamide;
- 10 2S-[[[(N-benzylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(4-methoxyphenyl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methyl-pentanamide;
- 15 2S-[[[(N-benzylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethyl-butanamide;
- 20 2S-[[[(N-benzylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-methyl-butanamide;
- 25 2S-[[[(N-benzylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methyl-pentanamide;
- 30 2S-[[[(N-benzylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(benzothiazol-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethyl-butanamide;
- 35 2S-[[[(N-benzylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(benzothiazol-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-methyl-butanamide;
- 40 2S-[[[(N-benzylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(2-naphthyl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-methyl-butanamide;
- 45 2S-[[[(N-benzylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(2-naphthyl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methyl-pentanamide;
- 50 2S-[[[(N-benzylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,4-benzodioxan-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethyl-butanamide;
- 55 2S-[[[(N-benzylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,4-benzodioxan-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-methyl-butanamide;
- 2S-[[[(N-benzylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(

- 1,4-benzodioxan-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methyl-pentanamide;
- 5 2S-[[(N-benzylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]pent-4-ynamide;
- 10 2S-[[(N-benzylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[phenylsulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]pent-4-ynamide;
- 15 2S-[[(N-benzylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(4-methoxyphenyl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]pent-4-ynamide;
- 20 2S-[[(N-benzylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[benzothiazol-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]pent-4-ynamide;
- 25 2S-[[(N-benzylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]pent-4-ynamide;
- 30 2S-[[(N-benzylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[2-naphthyl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]pent-4-ynamide;
- 35 2S-[[(N-benzylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,4-benzodioxan-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]pent-4-ynamide;
- 40 2S-[[(N-cyclopropylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethyl-butanamide;
- 45 2S-[[(N-cyclopropylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methyl-pentanamide;
- 50 2S-[[(N-cyclopropylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[phenylsulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethyl-butanamide;
- 55 2S-[[(N-cyclopropylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[phenylsulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-methyl-butanamide;

- 2S-[(N-cyclopropylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
[[phenylsulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methyl-pentanamide;
- 5 2S-[(N-cyclopropylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
[[4-methoxyphenyl]sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethyl-butanamide;
- 10 2S-[(N-cyclopropylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
[[4-methoxyphenyl]sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-methyl-butanamide;
- 15 2S-[(N-cyclopropylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
[[4-methoxyphenyl]sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methyl-pentanamide;
- 20 2S-[(N-cyclopropylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
[[2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl]sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)
amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethyl-butanamide;
- 25 2S-[(N-cyclopropylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
[[2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl]sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)
amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-methyl-butanamide;
- 30 2S-[(N-cyclopropylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
[[2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl]sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)
amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methyl-pentanamide;
- 35 2S-[(N-cyclopropylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
[[benzothiazol-6-yl]sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethyl-butanamide;
- 40 2S-[(N-cyclopropylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
[[benzothiazol-6-yl]sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-methyl-butanamide;
- 45 2S-[(N-cyclopropylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
[[2-naphthyl]sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethyl-butanamide;
- 50 2S-[(N-cyclopropylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
[[2-naphthyl]sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methyl-pentanamide;
- 55 2S-[(N-cyclopropylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
[[1,4-benzodioxan-6-yl]sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-
1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethyl-butanamide;

- 2S-[(N-cyclopropylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
[(1,4-benzodioxan-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-
1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-methyl-butanamide;
- 5 2S-[(N-cyclopropylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
[(1,4-benzodioxan-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-
1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methyl-pentanamide;
- 10 2S-[(N-cyclopropylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-
1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]pent-4-ynamide;
- 15 2S-[(N-cyclopropylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
[(phenylsulfonyl)(2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
(phenylmethyl)propyl]pent-4-ynamide;
- 20 2S-[(N-cyclopropylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
[(4-methoxyphenyl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
(phenylmethyl)propyl]pent-4-ynamide;
- 25 2S-[(N-cyclopropylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
[(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
(phenylmethyl)propyl]pent-4-ynamide;
- 30 2S-[(N-cyclopropylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
[(2-naphthyl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
(phenylmethyl)propyl]pent-4-ynamide;
- 35 2S-[(N-cyclopropylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
[(1,4-benzodioxan-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-
1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]pent-4-ynamide;
- 40 2S-[(N-cyclopropylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-
1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]pent-4-ynamide;
- 45 2S-[(N-2-methoxyethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-
3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)
amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethyl-butanamide;
- 50 2S-[(N-2-methoxyethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-
3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)
amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methyl-pentanamide;
- 55 2S-[(N-2-methoxyethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-
3-[(phenylsulfonyl)(2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethyl-butanamide;

- 2S-[(N-2-methoxyethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-
3-[(phenylsulfonyl)(2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-methyl-butanamide;
- 5 2S-[(N-2-methoxyethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-
3-[(phenylsulfonyl)(2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methyl-pentanamide;
- 10 2S-[(N-2-methoxyethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-
3-[(4-methoxyphenyl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethyl-butanamide;
- 15 2S-[(N-2-methoxyethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-
3-[(4-methoxyphenyl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-methyl-butanamide;
- 20 2S-[(N-2-methoxyethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-
3-[(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)
amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethyl-butanamide;
- 25 2S-[(N-2-methoxyethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-
3-[(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)
amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-methyl-butanamide;
- 30 2S-[(N-2-methoxyethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-
3-[(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)
amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methyl-pentanamide;
- 35 2S-[(N-2-methoxyethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-
3-[(benzothiazol-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-
1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethyl-butanamide;
- 40 2S-[(N-2-methoxyethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-
3-[(benzothiazol-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-
1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methyl-pentanamide;
- 45 2S-[(N-2-methoxyethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-
3-[(2-naphthyl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethyl-butanamide;
- 50 2S-[(N-2-methoxyethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-
3-[(2-naphthyl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-methyl-butanamide;
- 55 2S-[(N-2-methoxyethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-
3-[(2-naphthyl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methyl-pentanamide;

- 2S-[(N-2-methoxyethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-
3-[(1,4-benzodioxan-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)
amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethyl-butanamide;
- 5 2S-[(N-2-methoxyethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-
3-[(1,4-benzodioxan-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)
amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-methyl-butanamide;
- 10 2S-[(N-2-methoxyethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-
3-[(1,4-benzodioxan-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)
amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methyl-pentanamide;
- 15 2S-[(N-2-methoxyethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-
3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)
amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]pent-4-ynamide;
- 20 2S-[(N-2-methoxyethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-
3-[(phenylsulfonyl)(2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
(phenylmethyl)propyl]pent-4-ynamide;
- 25 2S-[(N-2-methoxyethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-
3-[(4-methoxyphenyl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
(phenylmethyl)propyl]pent-4-ynamide;
- 30 2S-[(N-2-methoxyethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-
3-[(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)
amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]pent-4-ynamide;
- 35 2S-[(N-2-methoxyethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-
3-[(2-naphthyl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
(phenylmethyl)propyl]pent-4-ynamide;
- 40 2S-[(N-2-methoxyethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-
3-[(1,4-benzodioxan-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)
amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]pent-4-ynamide; and
- 45 As utilized herein, the term "alkyl", alone or in
combination, means a straight-chain or branched-chain
alkyl radical containing preferably from 1 to 8 carbon
atoms, more preferably from 1 to 5 carbon atoms, most
preferably 1 to 3 carbon atoms. Examples of such
radicals include methyl, ethyl, n-propyl, isopropyl,
n-butyl, isobutyl, sec-butyl, tert-butyl, pentyl, iso-
amyl, hexyl, octyl and the like. The term

"hydroxyalkyl", alone or in combination, means a alkyl radical as defined above wherein at least one hydrogen atom has been replaced by a hydroxyl group, but no more than one hydrogen atom per carbon atom; preferably, 1 to 5 hydrogen atoms have been replaced by hydroxyl groups; more preferably, 1 to 2 hydrogen atoms have been replaced by hydroxyl groups; and most preferably, one hydrogen atom has been replaced by a hydroxyl group. The term "alkenyl", alone or in combination, means a straight-chain or branched-chain hydrocarbon radical having one or more double bonds and containing preferably from 2 to 10 carbon atoms, more preferably from 2 to 8 carbon atoms, most preferably from 2 to 5 carbon atoms. Examples of suitable alkenyl radicals include ethenyl, propenyl, 2-methylpropenyl, 1,4-butadienyl and the like. The term "alkynyl", alone or in combination, means a straight-chain or branched chain hydrocarbon radical having one or more triple bonds and containing preferably from 2 to 10 carbon atoms, more preferably from 2 to 5 carbon atoms.

Examples of alkynyl radicals include ethynyl, propynyl (propargyl), butynyl and the like. The term "alkoxy", alone or in combination, means an alkyl ether radical wherein the term alkyl is as defined above. Examples of suitable alkyl ether radicals include methoxy, ethoxy, n-propoxy, isopropoxy, n-butoxy, iso-butoxy, sec-butoxy, tert-butoxy and the like. The term "alkoxyalkyl", alone or in combination, means a alkyl radical as defined above wherein at least one hydrogen atom has been replaced by a alkoxy group, but no more than one hydrogen atom per carbon atom; preferably, 1 to 4 hydrogen atoms have been replaced by alkoxy groups; more preferably, 1 to 2 hydrogen atoms have been replaced by alkoxy groups; and most preferably, one hydrogen atom has been replaced by a alkoxy group. The term "cycloalkyl", alone or in combination, means a saturated or partially saturated monocyclic, bicyclic or tricyclic alkyl radical wherein each cyclic moiety contains preferably from 3 to 8 carbon atom ring members, more preferably from 3 to 7 carbon

atom ring members, most preferably from 5 to 6 carbon atom ring members, and which may optionally be a benzo fused ring system which is optionally substituted as defined herein with respect to the definition of aryl.

5 Examples of such cycloalkyl radicals include cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, cycloheptyl, octahydronaphthyl, 2,3-dihydro-1H-indenyl, adamantyl and the like. "Bicyclic" and "tricyclic" as used herein are intended to include both fused ring systems, such as

10 naphthyl and β -carbolinyl, and substituted ring systems, such as biphenyl, phenylpyridyl, naphthyl and diphenylpiperazinyl. The term "cycloalkylalkyl" means an alkyl radical as defined above which is substituted by a cycloalkyl radical as defined above. Examples of such

15 cycloalkylalkyl radicals include cyclopropylmethyl, cyclobutylmethyl, cyclopentylmethyl, cyclohexylmethyl, 1-cyclopentylethyl, 1-cyclohexylethyl, 2-cyclopentylethyl, 2-cyclohexylethyl, cyclobutylpropyl, cyclopentylpropyl, cyclohexylbutyl and the like. The term "benzo", alone or

20 in combination, means the divalent radical $C_6H_4=$ derived from benzene. The term "aryl", alone or in combination, means a phenyl or naphthyl radical which is optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from alkyl, alkoxy, halogen, hydroxy, amino, nitro, cyano,

25 haloalkyl, carboxy, alkoxycarbonyl, cycloalkyl, heterocyclo, alkanoylamino, amido, amidino, alkoxycarbonylamino, N-alkylamidino, alkylamino, dialkylamino, N-alkylamido, N,N-dialkylamido, aralkoxycarbonylamino, alkylthio, alkylsulfinyl,

30 alkylsulfonyl and the like. Examples of aryl radicals are phenyl, p-tolyl, 4-methoxyphenyl, 4-(tert-butoxy)phenyl, 3-methyl-4-methoxyphenyl, 4-fluorophenyl, 4-chlorophenyl, 3-nitrophenyl, 3-aminophenyl, 4-CF₃-phenyl, 3-acetamidophenyl, 4-acetamidophenyl, 2-methyl-3-acetamidophenyl, 2-methyl-3-aminophenyl, 3-methyl-4-aminophenyl, 2-amino-3-methylphenyl, 2,4-dimethyl-3-aminophenyl, 4-hydroxyphenyl, 3-methyl-4-hydroxyphenyl, 1-naphthyl, 2-naphthyl, 3-amino-1-naphthyl, 2-methyl-3-

amino-1-naphthyl, 6-amino-2-naphthyl, 4,6-dimethoxy-2-naphthyl, piperazinylphenyl and the like. The terms "aralkyl" and "aralkoxy", alone or in combination, means an alkyl or alkoxy radical as defined above in which at least one hydrogen atom is replaced by an aryl radical as defined above, such as benzyl, benzyloxy, 2-phenylethyl, dibenzylmethyl, hydroxyphenylmethyl, methylphenylmethyl, diphenylmethyl, diphenylmethoxy, 4-methoxyphenylmethoxy and the like. The term "aralkoxycarbonyl", alone or in combination, means a radical of the formula aralkyl-O-C(O)- in which the term "aralkyl" has the significance given above. Examples of an aralkoxycarbonyl radical are benzyloxycarbonyl and 4-methoxyphenylmethoxycarbonyl. The term "aryloxy" means a radical of the formula aryl-O- in which the term aryl has the significance given above. The term "alkanoyl", alone or in combination, means an acyl radical derived from an alkanecarboxylic acid, examples of which include acetyl, propionyl, butyryl, valeryl, 4-methylvaleryl, and the like. The term 20 "cycloalkylcarbonyl" means an acyl radical of the formula cycloalkyl-C(O)- in which the term "cycloalkyl" has the significance given above, such as cyclopropylcarbonyl, cyclohexylcarbonyl, adamantlycarbonyl, 1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-2-naphthoyl, 2-acetamido-1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-2-naphthoyl, 1-hydroxy-1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-6-naphthoyl and the like. The term "aralkanoyl" means an acyl radical derived from an aryl-substituted alkanecarboxylic acid such as phenylacetyl, 3-phenylpropionyl (hydrocinnamoyl), 4-phenylbutyryl, (2-naphthyl)acetyl, 4-30 chlorohydrocinnamoyl, 4-aminohydrocinnamoyl, 4-methoxyhydrocinnamoyl, and the like. The term "aroyl" means an acyl radical derived from an arylcarboxylic acid, "aryl" having the meaning given above. Examples of such aroyl radicals include substituted and unsubstituted benzoyl or napthoyl such as benzoyl, 4-chlorobenzoyl, 4-carboxybenzoyl, 4-(benzyloxycarbonyl)benzoyl, 1-naphthoyl, 2-naphthoyl, 6-carboxy-2 naphthoyl, 6-(benzyloxycarbonyl)-2-naphthoyl, 3-benzyloxy-2-naphthoyl.

3-hydroxy-2-naphthoyl, 3-(benzyloxyformamido)-2-naphthoyl, and the like. The terms "heterocyclo," alone or in combination, means a saturated or partially unsaturated monocyclic, bicyclic or tricyclic heterocycle
5 radical containing at least one nitrogen, oxygen or sulfur atom ring member and having preferably 3 to 8 ring members in each ring, more preferably 3 to 7 ring members in each ring and most preferably 5 to 6 ring members in each ring. "Heterocyclo" is intended to include
10 sulfones, sulfoxides, N-oxides of tertiary nitrogen ring members, and carbocyclic fused and benzo fused ring systems. Such heterocyclo radicals may be optionally substituted on one or more carbon atoms by halogen, alkyl, alkoxy, hydroxy, oxo, aryl, aralkyl, heteroaryl,
15 heteroaralkyl, amidino, N-alkylamidino, alkoxycarbonylamino, alkylsulfonylamino and the like, and/or on a secondary nitrogen atom (i.e., -NH-) by hydroxy, alkyl, aralkoxycarbonyl, alkanoyl, heteroaralkyl, phenyl or phenylalkyl and/or on a tertiary
20 nitrogen atom (i.e., =N-) by oxido. "Heterocycloalkyl" means an alkyl radical as defined above in which at least one hydrogen atom is replaced by a heterocyclo radical as defined above, such as pyrrolidinylmethyl, tetrahydrothienylmethyl, pyridylmethyl and the like. The
25 term "heteroaryl", alone or in combination, means an aromatic heterocyclo radical as defined above, which is optionally substituted as defined above with respect to the definitions of aryl and heterocyclo. Examples of such heterocyclo and heteroaryl groups are pyrrolidinyl,
30 piperidinyl, piperazinyl, morpholinyl, thiamorpholinyl, pyrrolyl, imidazolyl (e.g., imidazol 4-yl, 1-benzyloxycarbonylimidazol-4-yl, etc.), pyrazolyl, pyridyl, (e.g., 2-(1-piperidinyl)pyridyl and 2-(4-benzyl piperazin-1-yl-1-pyridinyl, etc.), pyrazinyl,
35 pyrimidinyl, furyl, tetrahydrofuryl, thietyl, tetrahydrothienyl and its sulfoxide and sulfone derivatives, triazolyl, oxazolyl, thiazolyl, indolyl (e.g., 2-indolyl, etc.), quinolinyl, (e.g., 2-quinolinyl,

3-quinolinyl, 1-oxido-2-quinolinyl, etc.), isoquinolinyl (e.g., 1-isoquinolinyl, 3-isoquinolinyl, etc.), tetrahydroquinolinyl (e.g., 1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-2-quinolyl, etc.), 1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinolinyl (e.g., 5 1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-1-oxo-isoquinolinyl, etc.), quinoxaliny1, β -carbolinyl, 2-benzofurancarbonyl, 1-, 2-, 10 ,4- or 5-benzimidazolyl, methylenedioxypyhen-4-yl, methylenedioxypyhen-5-yl, ethylenedioxypyhenyl, benzothiazolyl, benzopyranyl, benzofuryl, 2,3-dihydrobenzofuryl, benzoxazolyl, thiophenyl and the like.

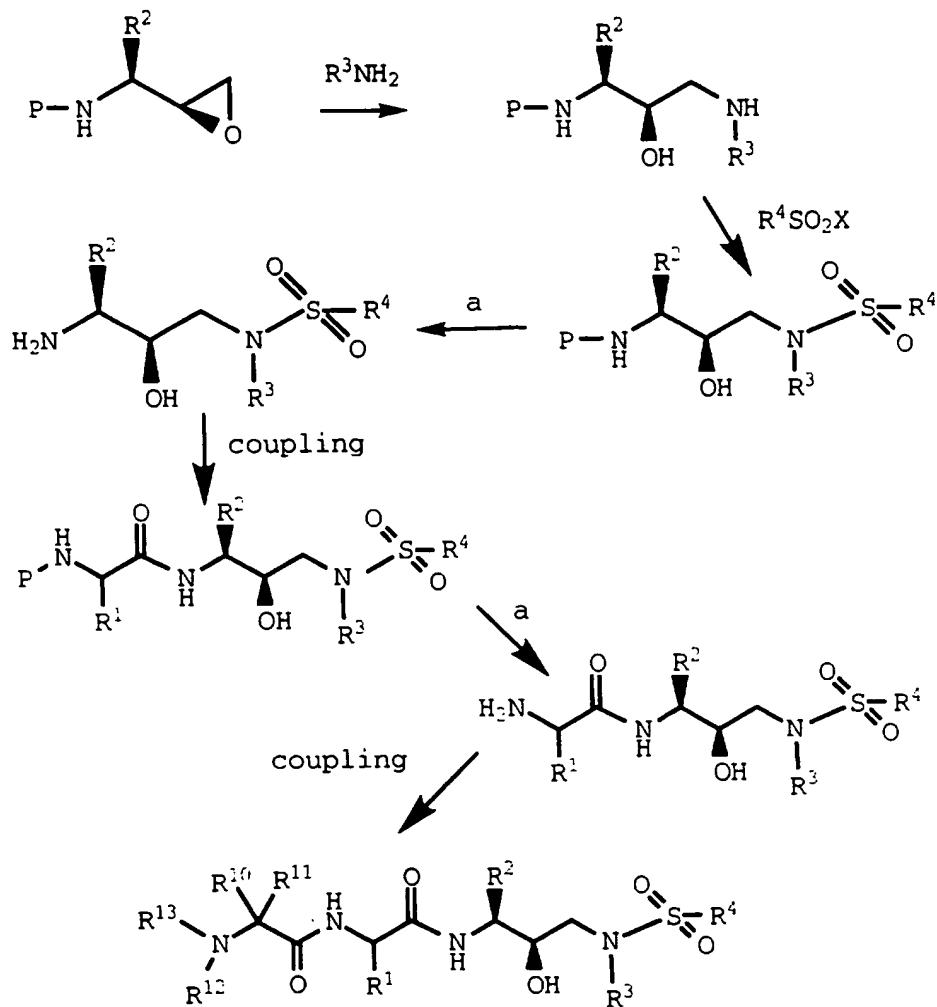
The term "cycloalkylalkoxycarbonyl" means an acyl group derived from a cycloalkylalkoxycarboxylic acid of the formula cycloalkylalkyl-O-COOH wherein cycloalkylalkyl has the meaning given above. The term "aryloxyalkanoyl" 15 means an acyl radical of the formula aryl-O-alkanoyl wherein aryl and alkanoyl have the meaning given above. The term "heterocycloalkoxycarbonyl" means an acyl group derived from heterocycloalkyl-O-COOH wherein heterocycloalkyl is as defined above. The term 20 "heterocycloalkanoyl" is an acyl radical derived from a heterocycloalkylcarboxylic acid wherein heterocyclo has the meaning given above. The term "heterocycloalkoxycarbonyl" means an acyl radical derived from a heterocycloalkyl-O-COOH wherein heterocyclo has the 25 meaning given above. The term "heteroaryloxycarbonyl" means an acyl radical derived from a carboxylic acid represented by heteroaryl-O-COOH wherein heteroaryl has the meaning given above. The term "aminocarbonyl" alone or in combination, means an amino-substituted carbonyl 30 (carbamoyl) group wherein the amino group can be a primary, secondary or tertiary amino group containing substituents selected from alkyl, aryl, aralkyl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkylalkyl radicals and the like. The term "aminoalkanoyl" means an acyl group derived from an 35 amino-substituted alkylcarboxylic acid wherein the amino group can be a primary, secondary or tertiary amino group containing substituents selected from alkyl, aryl, aralkyl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkylalkyl radicals and the

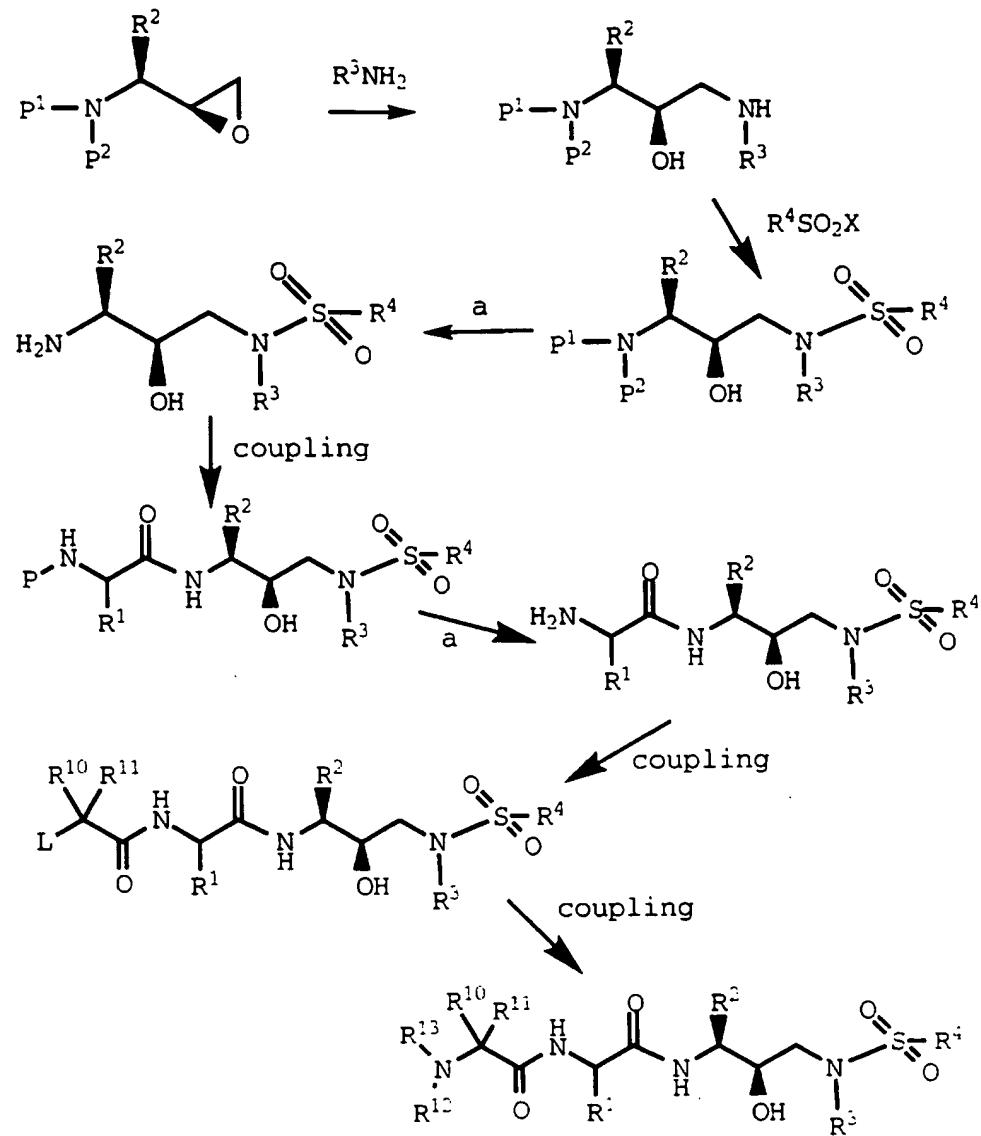
like. The term "halogen" means fluorine, chlorine, bromine or iodine. The term "haloalkyl" means an alkyl radical having the meaning as defined above wherein one or more hydrogens are replaced with a halogen. Examples 5 of such haloalkyl radicals include chloromethyl, 1-bromoethyl, fluoromethyl, difluoromethyl, trifluoromethyl, 1,1,1-trifluoroethyl and the like. The term "leaving group" (L or W) generally refers to groups readily displaceable by a nucleophile, such as an amine, 10 a thiol or an alcohol nucleophile. Such leaving groups are well known in the art. Examples of such leaving groups include, but are not limited to, N-hydroxysuccinimide, N-hydroxybenzotriazole, halides, triflates, tosylates and the like. Preferred leaving 15 groups are indicated herein where appropriate.

Procedures for preparing the compounds of Formula I are set forth below. It should be noted that the general procedure is shown as it relates to preparation of 20 compounds having the specified stereochemistry, for example, wherein the absolute stereochemistry about the hydroxyl group is designated as (R). However, such procedures are generally applicable to those compounds of opposite configuration, e.g., where the stereochemistry 25 about the hydroxyl group is (S). In addition, the compounds having the (R) stereochemistry can be utilized to produce those having the (S) stereochemistry. For example, a compound having the (R) stereochemistry can be inverted to the (S) stereochemistry using well-known 30 methods.

Preparation of Compounds of Formula I

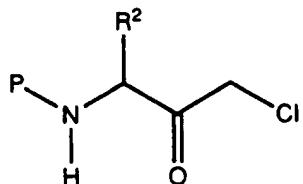
The compounds of the present invention represented by Formula I above can be prepared utilizing the
 5 following general procedures as schematically shown in Schemes I and II.

SCHEME I

SCHEME II

a) deprotection; X = Cl or Br; L = leaving group.

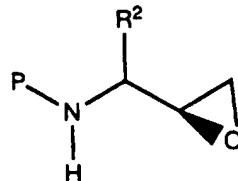
5 An N-protected chloroketone derivative of an amino acid having the formula:



wherein P represents an amino protecting group, and R² is as defined above, is reduced to the corresponding alcohol utilizing an appropriate reducing agent. Suitable amino protecting groups are well known in the art and include 5 carbobenzoxy, t-butoxycarbonyl, and the like. A preferred amino protecting group is carbobenzoxy. A preferred N-protected chloroketone is N-benzyloxycarbonyl-L-phenylalanine chloromethyl ketone. A preferred reducing agent is sodium borohydride. The 10 reduction reaction is conducted at a temperature of from -10°C to about 25°C, preferably at about 0°C, in a suitable solvent system such as, for example, tetrahydrofuran, and the like. The N-protected chloroketones are commercially available, e.g., such as 15 from Bachem, Inc., Torrance, California. Alternatively, the chloroketones can be prepared by the procedure set forth in S. J. Fittkau, J. Prakt. Chem., 315, 1037 (1973), and subsequently N-protected utilizing procedures which are well known in the art.

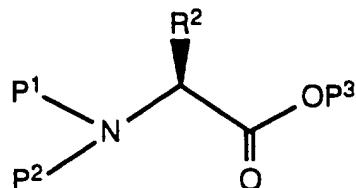
20

The halo alcohol can be utilized directly, as described below, or, preferably, is reacted, preferably at room temperature, with a suitable base in a suitable solvent system to produce an N-protected amino epoxide of 25 the formula:



wherein P and R² are as defined above. Suitable solvent systems for preparing the amino epoxide include ethanol, methanol, isopropanol, tetrahydrofuran, dioxane, and the 30 like including mixtures thereof. Suitable bases for producing the epoxide from the reduced chloroketone include potassium hydroxide, sodium hydroxide, potassium t-butoxide, DBU and the like. A preferred base is potassium hydroxide.

Alternatively, a protected amino epoxide can be prepared, such as in co-owned and co-pending PCT Patent Application Serial No. PCT/US93/04804 (WO 93/23388) and 5 PCT/US94/12201, and US Patent Application Attorney Docket No. C-2860, each of which is incorporated herein by reference in their entirety) disclose methods of preparing chiral epoxide, chiral cyanohydrin, chiral amine and other chiral intermediates useful in the 10 preparation of retroviral protease inhibitors, starting with a DL-, D- or L-amino acid which is reacted with a suitable amino-protecting group in a suitable solvent to produce an amino-protected amino acid ester. For the purposes of illustration, a protected L-amino acid with 15 the following formula will be used to prepare the inhibitors of this invention:



wherein P³ represents carboxyl-protecting group, e.g., methyl, ethyl, benzyl, tertiary-butyl, 4-20 methoxyphenylmethyl and the like; R² is as defined above; and P¹ and P² and/or P' independently are selected from amine protecting groups, including but not limited to, aralkyl, substituted aralkyl, cycloalkenylalkyl and substituted cycloalkenylalkyl, allyl, substituted allyl, 25 acyl, alkoxycarbonyl, aralkoxycarbonyl and silyl. Examples of aralkyl include, but are not limited to benzyl, ortho-methylbenzyl, trityl and benzhydryl, which can be optionally substituted with halogen, alkyl of C₁-C₈, alkoxy, hydroxy, nitro, alkylene, amino, 30 alkylamino, acylamino and acyl, or their salts, such as phosphonium and ammonium salts. Examples of aryl groups include phenyl, naphthalenyl, indanyl, anthracenyl, durenyl, 9-(9-phenylfluorenyl) and phenanthrenyl, cycloalkenylalkyl or substituted cycloalkenylalkyl

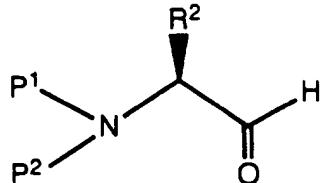
radicals containing cycloalkyls of C₆-C₁₀. Suitable acyl groups include carbobenzoxy, t-butoxycarbonyl, iso-butoxycarbonyl, benzoyl, substituted benzoyl, butyryl, acetyl, tri-fluoroacetyl, tri-chloroacetyl, phthaloyl and 5 the like. Preferably P¹ and P² are independently selected from aralkyl and substituted aralkyl. More preferably, each of P¹ and P² is benzyl.

Additionally, the P¹ and/or P² and/or P' protecting 10 groups can form a heterocyclic ring with the nitrogen to which they are attached, for example, 1,2-bis(methylene)benzene, phthalimidyl, succinimidyl, maleimidyl and the like and where these heterocyclic groups can further include adjoining aryl and cycloalkyl 15 rings. In addition, the heterocyclic groups can be mono-, di- or tri-substituted, e.g., nitrophthalimidyl. The term silyl refers to a silicon atom optionally substituted by one or more alkyl, aryl and aralkyl groups.

Suitable silyl protecting groups include, but are 20 not limited to, trimethylsilyl, triethylsilyl, tri-isopropylsilyl, tert-butyldimethylsilyl, dimethylphenylsilyl, 1,2-bis(dimethylsilyl)benzene, 25 1,2-bis(dimethylsilyl)ethane and diphenylmethylsilyl. Silylation of the amine functions to provide mono- or bis-disilylamine can provide derivatives of the aminoalcohol, amino acid, amino acid esters and amino acid amide. In the case of amino acids, amino acid 30 esters and amino acid amides, reduction of the carbonyl function provides the required mono- or bis-silyl aminoalcohol. Silylation of the aminoalcohol can lead to the N,N,O-tri-silyl derivative. Removal of the silyl function from the silyl ether function is readily 35 accomplished by treatment with, for example, a metal hydroxide or ammonium flouride reagent, either as a discrete reaction step or in situ during the preparation

of the amino aldehyde reagent. Suitable silylating agents are, for example, trimethylsilyl chloride, tert-butyl-dimethylsilyl chloride, phenyldimethylsilyl chloride, diphenylmethylsilyl chloride or their combination
5 products with imidazole or DMF. Methods for silylation of amines and removal of silyl protecting groups are well known to those skilled in the art. Methods of preparation of these amine derivatives from corresponding amino acids, amino acid amides or amino acid esters are
10 also well known to those skilled in the art of organic chemistry including amino acid/amino acid ester or aminoalcohol chemistry.

The amino-protected L-amino acid ester is then
15 reduced, to the corresponding alcohol. For example, the amino-protected L-amino acid ester can be reduced with diisobutylaluminum hydride at -78° C in a suitable solvent such as toluene. Preferred reducing agents include lithium aluminium hydride, lithium borohydride,
20 sodium borohydride, borane, lithium tri-ter-butoxyaluminum hydride, borane/THF complex. Most preferably, the reducing agent is diisobutylaluminum hydride (DiBAL-H) in toluene. The resulting alcohol is then converted, for example, by way of a Swern oxidation,
25 to the corresponding aldehyde of the formula:



wherein P¹, P² and R² are as defined above. Thus, a dichloromethane solution of the alcohol is added to a cooled (-75 to -68° C) solution of oxalyl chloride in
30 dichloromethane and DMSO in dichloromethane and stirred for 35 minutes.

Acceptable oxidizing reagents include, for example, sulfur trioxide-pyridine complex and DMSO, oxalyl

chloride and DMSO, acetyl chloride or anhydride and DMSO, trifluoroacetyl chloride or anhydride and DMSO, methanesulfonyl chloride and DMSO or tetrahydro thiophene-S-oxide, toluenesulfonyl bromide and DMSO,
5 trifluoromethanesulfonyl anhydride (triflic anhydride) and DMSO, phosphorus pentachloride and DMSO, dimethylphosphoryl chloride and DMSO and isobutyl chloroformate and DMSO. The oxidation conditions reported by Reetz et al [Angew Chem., 99, p. 1186,
10 (1987)], [Angew Chem. Int. Ed. Engl., 26, p. 1141, 1987) employed oxalyl chloride and DMSO at -78°C.

The preferred oxidation method described in this invention is sulfur trioxide pyridine complex,
15 triethylamine and DMSO at room temperature. This system provides excellent yields of the desired chiral protected amino aldehyde usable without the need for purification i.e., the need to purify kilograms of intermediates by chromatography is eliminated and large scale operations
20 are made less hazardous. Reaction at room temperature also eliminated the need for the use of low temperature reactor which makes the process more suitable for commercial production.

25 The reaction may be carried out under an inert atmosphere such as nitrogen or argon, or normal or dry air, under atmospheric pressure or in a sealed reaction vessel under positive pressure. Preferred is a nitrogen atmosphere. Alternative amine bases include, for
30 example, tri-butyl amine, tri-isopropyl amine, N-methylpiperidine, N-methyl morpholine, azabicyclononane, diisopropylethylamine, 2,2,6,6-tetramethylpiperidine, N,N-dimethylaminopyridine, or mixtures of these bases. Triethylamine is a preferred base. Alternatives to pure
35 DMSO as solvent include mixtures of DMSO with non-protic or halogenated solvents such as tetrahydrofuran, ethyl acetate, toluene, xylene, dichloromethane, ethylene dichloride and the like. Dipolar aprotic co-solvents

include acetonitrile, dimethylformamide, dimethylacetamide, acetamide, tetramethyl urea and its cyclic analog, N-methylpyrrolidone, sulfolane and the like. Rather than N,N-dibenzylphenylalaninol as the 5 aldehyde precursor, the phenylalaninol derivatives discussed above can be used to provide the corresponding N-monosubstituted [either P¹ or P² = H] or N,N-disubstituted aldehyde.

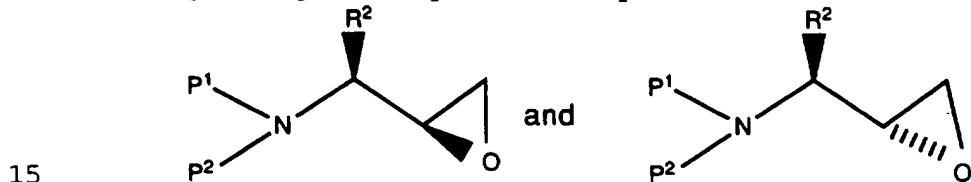
10 In addition, hydride reduction of an amide or ester derivative of the corresponding benzyl (or other suitable protecting group) nitrogen protected phenylalanine, substituted phenylalanine or cycloalkyl analog of phenylalanine derivative can be carried out to provide 15 the aldehydes. Hydride transfer is an additional method of aldehyde synthesis under conditions where aldehyde condensations are avoided, cf, Oppenauer Oxidation.

20 The aldehydes of this process can also be prepared by methods of reducing protected phenylalanine and phenylalanine analogs or their amide or ester derivatives by, e.g., sodium amalgam with HCl in ethanol or lithium or sodium or potassium or calcium in ammonia. The reaction temperature may be from about -20°C to about 25 25°C, and preferably from about 5°C to about 25°C. Two additional methods of obtaining the nitrogen protected aldehyde include oxidation of the corresponding alcohol with bleach in the presence of a catalytic amount of 2,2,6,6-tetramethyl-1-pyridyloxy free radical. In a 30 second method, oxidation of the alcohol to the aldehyde is accomplished by a catalytic amount of tetrabutylammonium perruthenate in the presence of N-methylmorpholine-N-oxide.

35 Alternatively, an acid chloride derivative of a protected phenylalanine or phenylalanine derivative as disclosed above can be reduced with hydrogen and a catalyst such as Pd on barium carbonate or barium

sulphate, with or without an additional catalyst moderating agent such as sulfur or a thiol (Rosenmund Reduction).

5 The aldehyde resulting from the Swern oxidation is then reacted with a halomethylolithium reagent, which reagent is generated *in situ* by reacting an alkylolithium or aryllithium compound with a dihalomethane represented by the formula $X^1CH_2X^2$ wherein X^1 and X^2 independently represent I, Br or Cl. For example, a solution of the 10 aldehyde and chloroiodomethane in THF is cooled to -78° C and a solution of n-butyllithium in hexane is added. The resulting product is a mixture of diastereomers of the corresponding amino-protected epoxides of the formulas:



15 The diastereomers can be separated e.g., by chromatography, or, alternatively, once reacted in subsequent steps the diastereomeric products can be separated. A D-amino acid can be utilized in place of 20 the L-amino acid in order to prepare compounds having an (S) stereochemistry at the carbon bonded to R².

The addition of chloromethylolithium or bromomethylolithium to a chiral amino aldehyde is highly 25 diastereoselective. Preferably, the chloromethylolithium or bromomethylolithium is generated *in-situ* from the reaction of the dihalomethane and n-butyllithium. Acceptable methyleneating halomethanes include chloroiodomethane, bromochloromethane, dibromomethane, 30 diiodomethane, bromofluoromethane and the like. The sulfonate ester of the addition product of, for example, hydrogen bromide to formaldehyde is also a methyleneating agent. Tetrahydrofuran is the preferred solvent, however alternative solvents such as toluene, dimethoxyethane,

ethylene dichloride, methylene chloride can be used as pure solvents or as a mixture. Dipolar aprotic solvents such as acetonitrile, DMF, N-methylpyrrolidone are useful as solvents or as part of a solvent mixture. The
5 reaction can be carried out under an inert atmosphere such as nitrogen or argon. For n-butyl lithium can be substituted other organometallic reagents reagents such as methylolithium, tert-butyl lithium, sec-butyl lithium, phenyllithium, phenyl sodium and the like. The reaction
10 can be carried out at temperatures of between about -80°C to 0°C but preferably between about -80°C to -20°C. The most preferred reaction temperatures are between -40°C to -15°C. Reagents can be added singly but multiple additions are preferred in certain conditions. The
15 preferred pressure of the reaction is atmospheric however a positive pressure is valuable under certain conditions such as a high humidity environment.

Alternative methods of conversion to the epoxides of
20 this invention include substitution of other charged methylenation precursor species followed by their treatment with base to form the analogous anion. Examples of these species include trimethylsulfoxonium tosylate or triflate, tetramethylammonium halide,
25 methyldiphenylsulfoxonium halide wherein halide is chloride, bromide or iodide.

The conversion of the aldehydes of this invention into their epoxide derivative can also be carried out in
30 multiple steps. For example, the addition of the anion of thioanisole prepared from, for example, a butyl or aryl lithium reagent, to the protected aminoaldehyde, oxidation of the resulting protected aminosulfide alcohol with well known oxidizing agents such as hydrogen peroxide, tert-butyl hypochlorite, bleach or sodium periodate to give a sulfoxide. Alkylation of the sulfoxide with, for example, methyl iodide or bromide, methyl tosylate, methyl mesylate, methyl triflate, ethyl
35

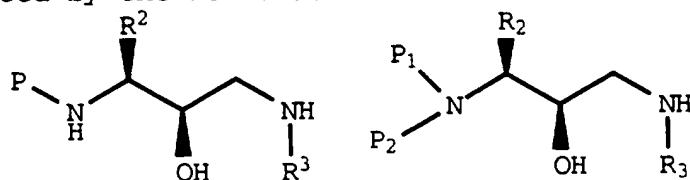
bromide, isopropyl bromide, benzyl chloride or the like, in the presence of an organic or inorganic base. Alternatively, the protected aminosulfide alcohol can be alkylated with, for example, the alkylating agents above, 5 to provide a sulfonium salts that are subsequently converted into the subject epoxides with tert-amine or mineral bases.

The desired epoxides formed, using most preferred 10 conditions, diastereoselectively in ratio amounts of at least about an 85:15 ratio (S:R). The product can be purified by chromatography to give the diastereomerically and enantiomerically pure product but it is more conveniently used directly without purification to 15 prepare retroviral protease inhibitors. The foregoing process is applicable to mixtures of optical isomers as well as resolved compounds. If a particular optical isomer is desired, it can be selected by the choice of starting material, e.g., L-phenylalanine, D- 20 phenylalanine, L-phenylalaninol, D-phenylalaninol, D-hexahydrophenylalaninol and the like, or resolution can occur at intermediate or final steps. Chiral auxiliaries such as one or two equivalents of camphor sulfonic acid, citric acid, camphoric acid, 2-methoxyphenylacetic acid 25 and the like can be used to form salts, esters or amides of the compounds of this invention. These compounds or derivatives can be crystallized or separated chromatographically using either a chiral or achiral column as is well known to those skilled in the art.

30

The amino epoxide is then reacted, in a suitable solvent system, with an equal amount, or preferably an excess of, a desired amine of the formula R^3NH_2 , wherein R^3 is hydrogen or is as defined above. The reaction can 35 be conducted over a wide range of temperatures, e.g., from about 10°C to about 100°C, but is preferably, but not necessarily, conducted at a temperature at which the solvent begins to reflux. Suitable solvent systems

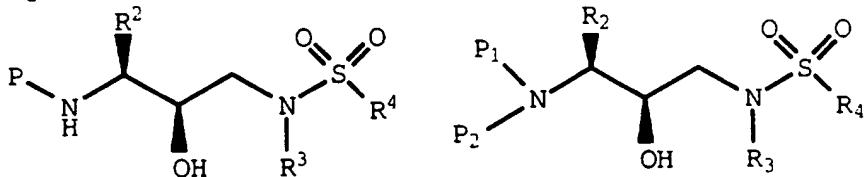
include protic, non-protic and dipolar aprotic organic solvents such as, for example, those wherein the solvent is an alcohol, such as methanol, ethanol, isopropanol, and the like, ethers such as tetrahydrofuran, dioxane and the like, and toluene, N,N-dimethylformamide, dimethyl sulfoxide, and mixtures thereof. A preferred solvent is isopropanol. The resulting product is a 3-(N-protected amino)-3-(R²)-1-(NHR³)-propan-2-ol derivative (hereinafter referred to as an amino alcohol) can be represented by the formulas:



wherein P, P¹, P² and R³ are as described above.

Alternatively, a haloalcohol can be utilized in place of the amino epoxide.

The amino alcohol defined above is then reacted in a suitable solvent with the sulfonyl chloride R⁴SO₂Cl, the sulfonyl bromide R⁴SO₂Br or the corresponding sulfonyl anhydride, preferably in the presence of an acid scavenger. Suitable solvents in which the reaction can be conducted include methylene chloride, tetrahydrofuran and the like. Suitable acid scavengers include triethylamine, pyridine and the like. The resulting sulfonamide derivative can be represented, depending on the epoxide utilized by the formulas



wherein P, P¹, P², R², R³ and R⁴ are as defined above. These intermediates are useful for preparing inhibitor compounds of the present invention.

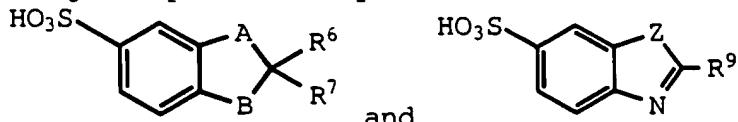
The sulfonyl halides of the formula R^4SO_2X can be prepared by the reaction of a suitable aryl, heteroaryl and benzo fused heterocyclo Grignard or lithium reagents with sulfonyl chloride, or sulfur dioxide followed by 5 oxidation with a halogen, preferably chlorine. Aryl, heteroaryl and benzo fused heterocyclo Grignard or lithium reagents can be prepared from their corresponding halide (such as chloro or bromo) compounds which are commercially available or readily prepared from 10 commercially available starting materials using known methods in the art. Also, thiols may be oxidized to sulfonyl chlorides using chlorine in the presence of water under carefully controlled conditions.

Additionally, sulfonic acids, such as arylsulfonic acids, 15 may be converted to sulfonyl halides using reagents such as PCl_5 , $SOCl_2$, $ClC(O)C(O)Cl$ and the like, and also to anhydrides using suitable dehydrating reagents. The sulfonic acids may in turn be prepared using procedures well known in the art. Some sulfonic acids are 20 commercially available. In place of the sulfonyl halides, sulfinyl halides (R^4SOX) or sulfenyl halides (R^4SX) can be utilized to prepare compounds wherein the $-SO_2-$ moiety is replaced by an $-SO-$ or $-S-$ moiety, respectively. Arylsulfonic acids, benzo fused 25 heterocyclo sulfonic acids or heteroaryl sulfonic acids can be prepared by sulfonation of the aromatic ring by well known methods in the art, such as by reaction with sulfuric acid, SO_3 , SO_3 complexes, such as $DMF(SO_3)$, pyridine(SO_3), N,N -dimethylacetamide(SO_3), and the like.

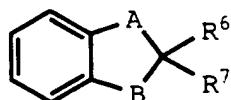
30 Preferably, arylsulfonyl halides are prepared from aromatic compounds by reaction with $DMF(SO_3)$ and $SOCl_2$ or $ClC(O)C(O)Cl$. The reactions may be performed stepwise or in a single pot.

35 Arylsulfonic acids, benzo fused heterocyclo sulfonic acids, heteroaryl sulfonic acids, arylmercaptans, benzo fused heterocyclo mercaptans, heteroarylmercaptans,

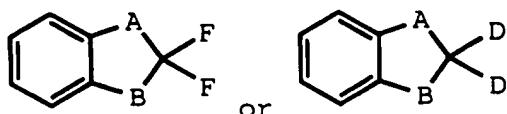
arylhalides, benzo fused heterocyclo halides, heteroarylhalides, and the like are commercially available or can be readily prepared from starting materials commercially available using standard methods well known in the art. For example, a number of sulfonic acids (R^4SO_3H) represented by the formulas



wherein A, B, Z, R^6 , R^7 and R^9 are as defined above, have been prepared from 1,2-benzenedithiol, 2-mercaptophenol, 1,2-benzenediol, 2-aminobenzothiazole, benzothiazole, 2-aminobenzimidazole, benzimidazole, and the like, which are commercially available, by Carter, US Patent 4,595,407; Ehrenfreund et al., US Patent 4,634,465; Yoder et al., J. Heterocycl. Chem. 4:166-167 (1967); Cole et al., Aust. J. Chem. 33:675-680 (1980); Cabiddu et al., Synthesis 797-798 (1976); Ncube et al., Tet. Letters 2345-2348 (1978); Ncube et al., Tet. Letters 255-256 (1977); Ansink & Cerfontain, Rec. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas 108:395-403 (1989); and Kajihara & Tsuchiya, EP 638564 20 A1, each of which are incorporated herein by reference in their entirety. For example, 1,2-benzenedithiol, 2-mercaptophenol or 1,2-benzenediol can be reacted with $R^6R^7C(L')_2$, where L' is as defined below, preferably, Br or I, in the presence of a base, such as hydroxide, or 25 $R^6R^7C=O$ in the presence of acid, such as toluenesulfonic acid, or P_2O_5 , to prepare the substituted benzo fused heterocycle of formula



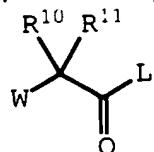
which can then be sulfonylated to the sulfonic acid 30 above. For example, CF_2Br_2 or CD_2Br_2 can be reacted with 1,2-benzenedithiol, 2-mercaptophenol or 1,2-benzenediol in the presence of base to produce the compounds



respectively, wherein A and B are O or S and D is a deuterium atom. Also, when A and/or B represent S, the sulfur can be oxidized using the methods described below 5 to the sulfone or sulfoxide derivatives.

Following preparation of the sulfonamide derivative, the amino protecting group P or P¹ and P² amino protecting groups are removed under conditions which will 10 not affect the remaining portion of the molecule. These methods are well known in the art and include acid hydrolysis, hydrogenolysis and the like. A preferred method involves removal of the protecting group, e.g., removal of a carbobenzoxy group, by hydrogenolysis 15 utilizing palladium on carbon in a suitable solvent system such as an alcohol, acetic acid, and the like or mixtures thereof. Where the protecting group is a t-butoxycarbonyl group, it can be removed utilizing an inorganic or organic acid, e.g., HCl or trifluoroacetic 20 acid, in a suitable solvent system, e.g., dioxane or methylene chloride. The resulting product is the amine salt derivative.

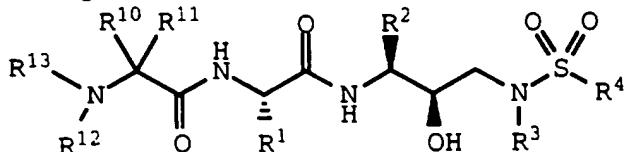
Following neutralization of the salt, the amine is 25 then coupled to the DL-, D-, or L-amino acid corresponding to the formula PNHCH(R¹)COOH, wherein P and R¹ are as defined above, followed by deprotection of the amine as described above, and coupling to



30 wherein R¹⁰ and R¹¹ are as defined above, W is a leaving group, such as mesylate, bromo or chloro, and L is leaving group such as halide, anhydride, active ester, and the like. For example when R¹⁰ and R¹¹ are both

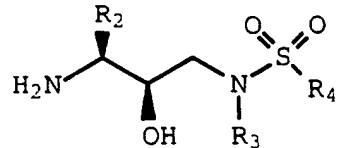
hydrogen radical, bromoacetyl halide, chloroacetyl halide or the corresponding anhydride can be used. Finally, reacting the above intermediate with the amine $R^{12}R^{13}NH$ can produce the antiviral compounds of the present

5 invention having the formula

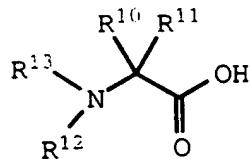


wherein R^1 , R^2 , R^3 , R^4 , R^{10} , R^{11} , R^{12} and R^{13} are as defined above. Amines of the formula $R^{12}R^{13}NH$ are commercially available, such as dimethylamine, 10 isobutylamine, isopropylamine, benzylamine, and the like; or can readily be prepared from commercially available starting materials using standard methods well known in the art.

15 Alternatively, following neutralization of the salt, the amine of formula



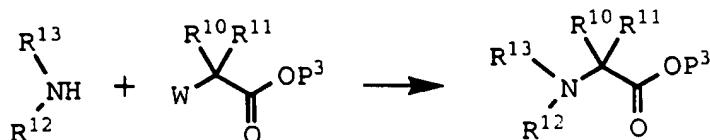
is then coupled to the DL-, D-, or L-amino acid corresponding to the formula $PNHCH(R^1)COOH$, wherein P and 20 R^1 are as defined above, followed by deprotection of the amine as described above and then coupling the deprotected amine to the amino acid of formula



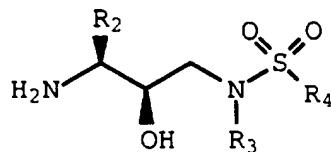
or specific stereoisomer thereof, wherein R^{10} , R^{11} , R^{12} , and R^{13} are as defined above, such as N-methylalanine, 25 N,N-dimethylalanine, N,N,2,2-tetramethylglycine, N-benzylserine and the like, to produce the antiviral compounds of the present invention. The amino acids are commercially available or are readily prepared from a 30 protected carboxylic acid with a leaving group W (defined

above), W-(R¹⁰)(R¹¹)C-CO₂P³, by reaction with the amine R¹²R¹³NH as shown in Scheme III, wherein P³, R¹⁰, R¹¹, R¹², and R¹³ are as defined above..

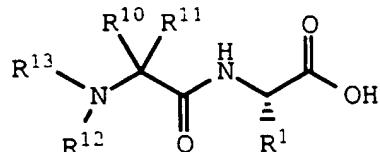
5

Scheme III

Alternatively, following neutralization of the salt,
10 the amine of formula



is then coupled to the DL-, D-, or L-amino acid
15 corresponding to the formula

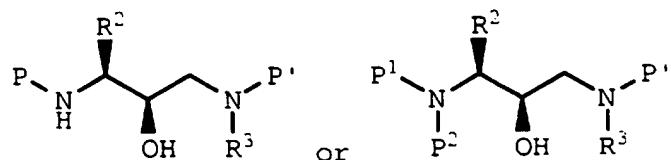


wherein R¹, R¹⁰, R¹¹, R¹², and R¹³ are as defined above,
20 which can be prepared in a similar fashion to the coupling methods described above from DL-, D-, or L-amino acid corresponding to the formula NH₂CH(R¹)COOP³, wherein P³ and R¹ are as defined above.

The DL-, D-, or L-amino acid corresponding to the formula PNHC(H(R¹))COOH or NH₂CH(R¹)COOP³, wherein P, P³ and R¹ are as defined above, are commercially available (Sigma Chemical Co.), or readily prepared using standard methods well known in the art from readily available starting materials. Preferably, P is a benzyloxycarbonyl
30

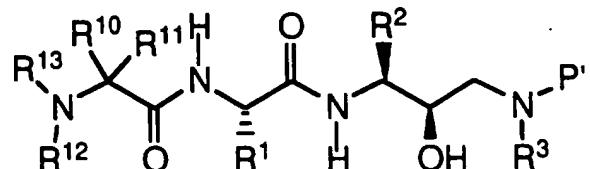
or t-butoxycarbonyl radical and P³ is benzyl or tert-butyl radicals. Standard coupling procedures can be used to couple the amino acids and amines. The carboxylic acid group is reacted to form an anhydride, mixed
 5 anhydride, acid halide, such as chloride or bromide, or active ester, such as esters of N-hydroxysuccinimide, HOBT and the like, using well known procedures and conditions. Appropriate solvent systems include tetrahydrofuran, ethylether, methyl-tert-butylether,
 10 methylene chloride, N,N-dimethylformamide and the like, including mixtures thereof.

Alternatively, the protected amino alcohol from the epoxide opening can be further protected at the newly
 15 introduced amino group with a protecting group P' which is not removed with the removal of the amino protecting groups P or P¹ and P², i.e., P' is selectively removable. One skilled in the art can choose appropriate combinations of P', P, P¹ and P². For example, suitable combinations are P
 20 = Cbz and P' = Boc; P' = Cbz and P = Boc; P¹ = Cbz, P² = benzyl and P' = Boc; and P¹ = P² = benzyl and P' = Boc. The resulting compound represented by the formula



25

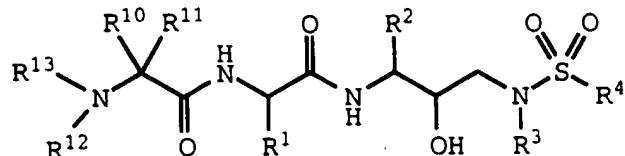
can be carried through the remainder of the synthesis to provide a compound of the formula



30

wherein P', R¹, R², R³, R¹⁰, R¹¹, R¹² and R¹³ are as defined above. The remainder of the synthesis above can be carried

out as desired either by the addition of desired residues or groups one at a time or in a preformed molecule made up of more than one residue or group in one step. The former approach is the sequential synthesis method and the latter 5 is the convergent synthesis method. Synthetic transformations are possible at this stage. The protecting group P' is then selectively removed and the resulting amine is reacted with the sulfonyl chloride R^4SO_2Cl , the sulfonyl bromide R^4SO_2Br or the corresponding sulfonyl anhydride, 10 preferably in the presence of an acid scavenger, to form the compounds of the present invention



15 wherein R^1 , R^2 , R^3 , R^4 , R^{10} , R^{11} , R^{12} and R^{13} are as defined above. This selective deprotection and conversion to the sulfonamide can be accomplished at either the end of the synthesis or at any appropriate intermediate step as desired.

20 The chemical reactions described above are generally disclosed in terms of their broadest application to the preparation of the compounds of this invention.

Occasionally, the reactions may not be applicable as described to each compound included within the disclosed 25 scope. The compounds for which this occurs will be readily recognized by those skilled in the art. In all such cases, either the reactions can be successfully performed by conventional modifications known to those skilled in the art, e.g., by appropriate protection of

30 interfering groups, by changing to alternative conventional reagents, by routine modification of reaction conditions, and the like, or other reactions disclosed herein or otherwise conventional, will be applicable to the preparation of the corresponding

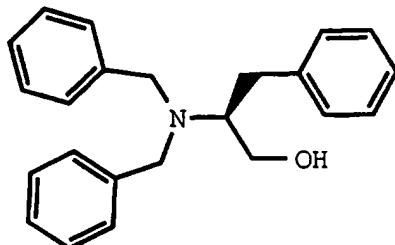
compounds of this invention. In all preparative methods, all starting materials are known or readily prepared from known starting materials.

Without further elaboration, it is believed that one skilled in the art can, using the preceding description, utilize the present invention to its fullest extent. The following preferred specific embodiments are, therefore, to be construed as merely illustrative, and not limitative of the remainder of the disclosure in any way whatsoever.

All reagents were used as received without purification. All proton and carbon NMR spectra were obtained on either a Varian VXR-300 or VXR-400 nuclear magnetic resonance spectrometer.

The following Examples illustrate the preparation of inhibitor compounds of the present invention and intermediates useful in preparing the inhibitor compounds of the present invention.

EXAMPLE 1



Preparation of 2S-[Bis(phenylmethyl)amino]benzenepropanol

METHOD 1: 2S-[Bis(phenylmethyl)amino]benzenepropanol from the DIBAL Reduction of N,N-bis(phenylmethyl)-L-Phenylalanine phenylmethyl ester

Step 1:

A solution of L-phenylalanine (50.0 g, 0.302 mol), sodium hydroxide (24.2 g, 0.605 mol) and potassium carbonate (83.6 g, 0.605 mol) in water (500 mL) was

heated to 97°C. Benzyl bromide (108.5 mL, 0.605 mol) was then slowly added (addition time - 25 min). The mixture was stirred at 97°C for 30 minutes under a nitrogen atmosphere. The solution was cooled to room temperature 5 and extracted with toluene (2 x 250 mL). The combined organic layers were washed with water and brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated to an oil. The identity of the product was confirmed as follows. Analytical TLC (10% ethyl acetate/hexane, 10 silica gel) showed major component at Rf value = 0.32 to be the desired tribenzylated compound, N,N-bis(phenylmethyl)-L-phenylalanine phenylmethyl ester. This compound can be purified by column chromatography (silica gel, 15% ethyl acetate/hexane). Usually the 15 product is pure enough to be used directly in the next step without further purification. ^1H NMR spectrum was in agreement with published literature. ^1H NMR (CDCl_3) δ , 3.00 and 3.14 (ABX-system, 2H, J_{AB}=14.1 Hz, J_{AX}=7.3 Hz and J_{BX}= 5.9 Hz), 3.54 and 3.92 (AB-System, 4 H, 20 J_{AB}=13.9 Hz), 3.71 (t, 1H, J=7.6 Hz), 5.11 and 5.23 (AB-System, 2H, J_{AB}=12.3 Hz), and 7.18 (m, 20 H). EIMS: m/z 434 (M-1).

Step 2:

25 The benzylated phenylalanine phenylmethyl ester (0.302 mol) from the previous reaction was dissolved in toluene (750 mL) and cooled to -55°C. A 1.5 M solution of DIBAL in toluene (443.9 mL, 0.666 mol) was added at a rate to maintain the temperature between -55 to -50°C 30 (addition time - 1 hr). The mixture was stirred for 20 minutes under a nitrogen atmosphere and then quenched at -55°C by the slow addition of methanol (37 ml). The cold solution was then poured into cold (5°C) 1.5 N HCl solution (1.8 L). The precipitated solid (approx. 138 g) 35 was filtered off and washed with toluene. The solid material was suspended in a mixture of toluene (400 mL) and water (100 ml). The mixture was cooled to 5°C and treated with 2.5 N NaOH (186 mL) and then stirred at room

temperature until solid dissolved. The toluene layer was separated from the aqueous phase and washed with water and brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated to a volume of 75 mL (89 g). Ethyl acetate 5 (25 mL) and hexane (25 mL) were added to the residue upon which the desired alcohol product began to crystallize. After 30 min, an additional 50 mL hexane were added to promote further crystallization. The solid was filtered off and washed with 50 mL hexane to give 34.9 g of first 10 crop product. A second crop of product (5.6 g) was isolated by refiltering the mother liquor. The two crops were combined and recrystallized from ethyl acetate (20 mL) and hexane (30 mL) to give 40 g of β -S-2-[Bis(phenylmethyl)amino]benzenepropanol, 40% yield from 15 L-phenylalanine. An additional 7 g (7%) of product can be obtained from recrystallization of the concentrated mother liquor. TLC of product R_f = 0.23 (10% ethyl acetate/hexane, silica gel); 1H NMR ($CDCl_3$) δ 2.44 (m, 1H,), 3.09 (m, 2H), 3.33 (m, 1H), 3.48 and 3.92 (AB- 20 System, 4H, J_{AB} = 13.3 Hz), 3.52 (m, 1H) and 7.23 (m, 15H); $[\alpha]_D^{25}$ +42.4 (c 1.45, CH_2Cl_2); DSC 77.67°C; Anal. Calcd. for $C_{23}H_{25}ON$: C, 83.34; H, 7.60; N, 4.23. Found: C, 83.43; H, 7.59; N, 4.22. HPLC on chiral stationary phase: Cyclobond I SP column (250 x 4.6 mm I.D.), mobile 25 phase: methanol/triethyl ammonium acetate buffer pH 4.2 (58:42, v/v), flow-rate of 0.5 ml/min, detection with detector at 230nm and a temperature of 0°C. Retention time: 11.25 min., retention time of the desired product enantiomer: 12.5 min.

30

METHOD 2: Preparation of β -S-2-[Bis(phenylmethyl)amino] benzene-propanol from the N,N-Dibenzylation of L-Phenylalaninol

35

L-phenylalaninol (176.6 g, 1.168 mol) was added to a stirred solution of potassium carbonate (484.6 g, 3.506 mol) in 710 mL of water. The mixture was heated to 65°C under a nitrogen atmosphere. A solution of benzyl

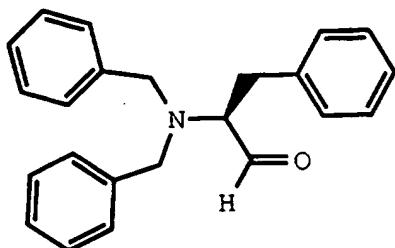
bromide (400 g, 2.339 mol) in 3A ethanol (305 mL) was added at a rate that maintained the temperature between 60-68°C. The biphasic solution was stirred at 65°C for 55 min and then allowed to cool to 10°C with vigorous stirring. The oily product solidified into small granules. The product was diluted with 2.0 L of tap water and stirred for 5 minutes to dissolve the inorganic by products. The product was isolated by filtration under reduced pressure and washed with water until the pH is 7.

10 The crude product obtained was air dried overnight to give a semi-dry solid (407 g) which was recrystallized from 1.1 L of ethyl acetate/heptane (1:10 by volume). The product was isolated by filtration (at -8°C), washed with 1.6 L of cold (-10°C) ethyl acetate/heptane

15 (1:10 by volume) and air-dried to give 339 g (88% yield) of 2S-2-[Bis(phenylmethyl)amino]benzene-propanol, Mp = 71.5-73.0°C. More product can be obtained from the mother liquor if necessary. The other analytical characterization was identical to compound prepared as

20 described in Method 1.

EXAMPLE 2



25 Preparation of 2S-[Bis(phenylmethyl)aminol
benzenepropanaldehyde

METHOD 1:

2S-[Bis(phenylmethyl)amino]benzene-propanol (200 g, 30 0.604 mol) was dissolved in triethylamine (300 mL, 2.15 mol). The mixture was cooled to 12°C and a solution of sulfur trioxide/pyridine complex (380 g, 2.39 mol) in

DMSO (1.6 L) was added at a rate to maintain the temperature between 8-17°C (addition time - 1.0 h). The solution was stirred at ambient temperature under a nitrogen atmosphere for 1.5 hour at which time the reaction was complete by TLC analysis (33% ethyl acetate/hexane, silica gel). The reaction mixture was cooled with ice water and quenched with 1.6 L of cold water (10-15°C) over 45 minutes. The resultant solution was extracted with ethyl acetate (2.0 L), washed with 5% citric acid (2.0 L), and brine (2.2 L), dried over MgSO₄ (280 g) and filtered. The solvent was removed on a rotary evaporator at 35-40°C and then dried under vacuum to give 198.8 g of 2S-[Bis-(phenylmethyl)amino]-benzenepropanaldehyde as a pale yellow oil (99.9%). The crude product obtained was pure enough to be used directly in the next step without purification. The analytical data of the compound were consistent with the published literature. $[\alpha]_{D}^{25} = -92.9^\circ$ (c 1.87, CH₂Cl₂); ¹H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ, 2.94 and 3.15 (ABX-System, 2H, J_{AB}= 13.9 Hz, J_{AX}= 7.3 Hz and J_{BX} = 6.2 Hz), 3.56 (t, 1H, 7.1 Hz), 3.69 and 3.82 (AB-System, 4H, J_{AB}= 13.7 Hz), 7.25 (m, 15 H) and 9.72 (s, 1H); HRMS Calcd for (M+1) C₂₃H₂₄NO 330.450, found: 330.1836. Anal. Calcd. for C₂₃H₂₃ON: C, 83.86; H, 7.04; N, 4.25. Found: C, 83.64; H, 7.42; N, 4.19. HPLC on chiral stationary phase: (S,S) Pirkle-Whelk-O 1 column (250 x 4.6 mm I.D.), mobile phase: hexane/isopropanol (99.5:0.5, v/v), flow-rate: 1.5 ml/min, detection with UV detector at 210nm. Retention time of the desired S-isomer: 8.75 min., retention time of the R-enantiomer 10.62 min.

METHOD 2:

A solution of oxallyl chloride (8.4 ml, 0.096 mol) in dichloromethane (240 ml) was cooled to -74°C. A solution of DMSO (12.0 ml, 0.155 mol) in dichloromethane (50 ml) was then slowly added at a rate to maintain the temperature at -74°C (addition time ~1.25 hr). The

mixture was stirred for 5 min. followed by addition of a solution of β S-2-[bis(phenylmethyl)amino]benzene-propanol (0.074 mol) in 100 ml of dichloromethane (addition time -20 min., temp. -75°C to -68°C). The solution was
5 stirred at -78°C for 35 minutes under a nitrogen atmosphere. Triethylamine (41.2 ml, 0.295 mol) was then added over 10 min. (temp. -78° to -68°C) upon which the ammonium salt precipitated. The cold mixture was stirred for 30 min. and then water (225 ml) was added. The
10 dichloromethane layer was separated from the aqueous phase and washed with water, brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated. The residue was diluted with ethyl acetate and hexane and then filtered to further remove the ammonium salt. The filtrate was
15 concentrated to give α S-[bis(phenylmethyl)amino]benzenepropanaldehyde. The aldehyde was carried on to the next step without purification.

METHOD 3:

20 To a mixture of 1.0 g(3.0 mmoles) of β S-2-[bis(phenylmethyl)amino]benzenepropanol 0.531 g(4.53 mmoles) of N-methyl morpholine, 2.27 g of molecular sieves(4A) and 9.1 mL of acetonitrile was added 53 mg (0.15 mmoles) of tetrapropylammonium perruthenate(TPAP).
25 The mixture was stirred for 40 minutes at room temperature and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was suspended in 15 mL of ethyl acetate, filtered through a pad of silica gel. The filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure to give a product
30 containing approximately 50% of α S-2-[bis(phenylmethyl)amino]benzene propanaldehyde as a pale yellow oil.

METHOD 4:

35 To a solution of 1.0 g (3.02 mmoles) of β S-2-[bis(phenylmethyl)amino]benzenepropanol in 9.0 mL of toluene was added 4.69 mg(0.03 mmoles) of 2,2,6,6-

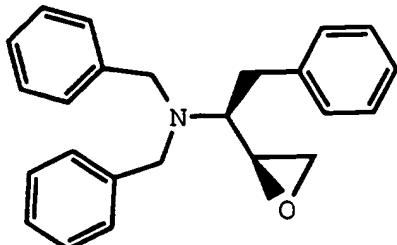
tetramethyl-1-piperidinyloxy, free radical (TEMPO), 0.32g (3.11 mmoles) of sodium bromide, 9.0 mL of ethyl acetate and 1.5 mL of water. The mixture was cooled to 0 °C and an aqueous solution of 2.87 mL of 5% household bleach containing 0.735 g (8.75 mmoles) of sodium bicarbonate and 8.53 mL of water was added slowly over 25 minutes. The mixture was stirred at 0 °C for 60 minutes. Two more additions (1.44 mL each) of bleach was added followed by stirring for 10 minutes. The two phase mixture was allowed to separate. The aqueous layer was extracted twice with 20 mL of ethyl acetate. The combined organic layer was washed with 4.0 mL of a solution containing 25 mg of potassium iodide and water (4.0 mL), 20 mL of 10% aqueous sodium thiosulfate solution and then brine solution. The organic solution was dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure to give 1.34g of crude oil containing a small amount of the desired product aldehyde, α S-[bis(phenylmethyl)amino]benzenepropanaldehyde.

METHOD 5:

Following the same procedures as described in Method 1 of this Example except 3.0 equivalents of sulfur trioxide pyridine complex was used and α S-[bis(phenylmethyl)amino]benzenepropanaldehyde was isolated in comparable yields.

EXAMPLE 3

30



Preparation of N,N-dibenzyl-3(S)-amino-1,2-(S)-epoxy-4-phenylbutane

METHOD 1:

A solution of α S-[Bis(phenylmethyl)amino]benzene-propanaldehyde (191.7 g, 0.58 mol) and chloroiodomethane (56.4 mL, 0.77 mol) in tetrahydrofuran (1.8 L) was cooled 5 to -30 to -35°C (colder temperature such as -70°C also worked well but warmer temperatures are more readily achieved in large scale operations) in a stainless steel reactor under a nitrogen atmosphere. A solution of n-butyl lithium in hexane (1.6 M, 365 mL, 0.58 mol) was 10 then added at a rate that maintained the temperature below -25°C. After addition the mixture was stirred at -30 to -35°C for 10 minutes. More additions of reagents were carried out in the following manner: (1) additional chloroiodomethane (17 mL) was added, followed by n-butyl 15 lithium (110 mL) at < -25°C. After addition the mixture was stirred at -30 to -35°C for 10 minutes. This was repeated once. (2) Additional chloroiodomethane (8.5 mL, 0.11 mol) was added, followed by n-butyl lithium (55 mL, 0.088 mol) at <-25°C. After addition the mixture was 20 stirred at -30 to -35°C for 10 minutes. This was repeated 5 times. (3) Additional chloroiodomethane (8.5 mL, 0.11 mol) was added, followed by n-butyl lithium (37 mL, 0.059 mol) at <-25°C. After addition the mixture was stirred at -30 to -35°C for 10 minutes. This was 25 repeated once. The external cooling was stopped and the mixture warmed to ambient temp. over 4 to 16 hours when TLC (silica gel, 20% ethyl acetate/hexane) indicated that the reaction was completed. The reaction mixture was cooled to 10°C and quenched with 1452 g of 16% ammonium 30 chloride solution (prepared by dissolving 232 g of ammonium chloride in 1220 mL of water), keeping the temperature below 23°C. The mixture was stirred for 10 minutes and the organic and aqueous layers were separated. The aqueous phase was extracted with ethyl 35 acetate (2x 500 mL). The ethyl acetate layer was combined with the tetrahydrofuran layer. The combined solution was dried over magnesium sulfate.

(220g), filtered and concentrated on a rotary evaporator at 65°C. The brown oil residue was dried at 70°C in vacuo (0.8 bar) for 1 h to give 222.8 g of crude material. (The crude product weight was >100%. Due to the relative 5 instability of the product on silica gel, the crude product is usually used directly in the next step without purification). The diastereomeric ratio of the crude mixture was determined by proton NMR: (2S)/(2R): 86:14. The minor and major epoxide diastereomers were 10 characterized in this mixture by tlc analysis (silica gel, 10% ethyl acetate/hexane), R_f = 0.29 & 0.32, respectively. An analytical sample of each of the diastereomers was obtained by purification on silica-gel chromatography (3% ethyl acetate/hexane) and 15 characterized as follows:

N,N, α S-Tris(phenylmethyl)-2S-oxiranemethanamine

1H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 2.49 and 2.51 (AB-System, 1H, 20 J_{AB} = 2.82), 2.76 and 2.77 (AB-System, 1H, J_{AB} = 4.03), 2.83 (m, 2H), 2.99 & 3.03 (AB-System, 1H, J_{AB} = 10.1 Hz), 3.15 (m, 1H), 3.73 & 3.84 (AB-System, 4H, J_{AB} = 14.00), 7.21 (m, 15H); ¹³C NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 139.55, 129.45, 128.42, 128.14, 128.09, 126.84, 125.97, 60.32, 25 54.23, 52.13, 45.99, 33.76; HRMS Calcd for C₂₄H₂₆NO (M+1) 344.477, found 344.2003.

N,N, α S-Tris(phenylmethyl)-2R-oxiranemethanamine

30 1H NMR (300 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 2.20 (m, 1H), 2.59 (m, 1H), 2.75 (m, 2H), 2.97 (m, 1H), 3.14 (m, 1H), 3.85 (AB-System, 4H), 7.25 (m, 15H). HPLC on chiral stationary phase: Pirkle-Whelk-O 1 column (250 x 4.6 mm I.D.), mobile phase: hexane/isopropanol (99.5:0.5, v/v), flow-rate: 1.5 ml/min, detection with UV detector at 210nm. 35 Retention time of (8): 9.38 min., retention time of enantiomer of (4): 13.75 min.

METHOD 2:

A solution of the crude aldehyde 0.074 mol and chloroiodomethane (7.0 ml, 0.096 mol) in tetrahydrofuran (285 ml) was cooled to -78°C, under a nitrogen atmosphere. A 1.6 M solution of n-butyl lithium in hexane (25 ml, 0.040 mol) was then added at a rate to maintain the temperature at -75°C (addition time - 15 min.). After the first addition, additional 10 chloroiodomethane (1.6 ml, 0.022 mol) was added again, followed by n-butyl lithium (23 ml, 0.037 mol), keeping the temperature at -75°C. The mixture was stirred for 15 min. Each of the reagents, chloroiodomethane (0.70 ml, 0.010 mol) and n-butyl lithium (5 ml, 0.008 mol) were 15 added 4 more times over 45 min. at -75°C. The cooling bath was then removed and the solution warmed to 22°C over 1.5 hr. The mixture was poured into 300 ml of saturated aq. ammonium chloride solution. The tetrahydrofuran layer was separated. The aqueous phase 20 was extracted with ethyl acetate (1 x 300 ml). The combined organic layers were washed with brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated to give a brown oil (27.4 g). The product could be used in the next step without purification. The desired diastereomer 25 can be purified by recrystallization at a subsequent step. The product could also be purified by chromatography.

METHOD 3:

30 A solution of αS-[Bis(phenylmethyl)amino]benzene-propanaldehyde (178.84 g, 0.54 mol) and bromochloromethane (46 mL, 0.71 mol) in tetrahydrofuran (1.8 L) was cooled to -30 to -35°C (colder temperature such as -70°C also worked well but warmer temperatures 35 are more readily achieved in large scale operations) in a stainless steel reactor under a nitrogen atmosphere. A solution of n-butyl lithium in hexane (1.6 M, 340 mL,

0.54 mol) was then added at a rate that maintained the temperature below -25°C. After addition the mixture was stirred at -30 to -35°C for 10 minutes. More additions of reagents were carried out in the following manner: (1) 5 additional bromochloromethane (14 mL) was added, followed by n-butyl lithium (102 mL) at < -25°C. After addition the mixture was stirred at -30 to -35°C for 10 minutes. This was repeated once. (2) Additional bromochloromethane (7 mL, 0.11 mol) was added, followed 10 by n-butyl lithium (51 mL, 0.082 mol) at <-25°C. After addition the mixture was stirred at -30 to -35°C for 10 minutes. This was repeated 5 times. (3) Additional bromochloromethane (7 mL, 0.11 mol) was added, followed by n-butyl lithium (51 mL, 0.082 mol) at <-25°C. After 15 addition the mixture was stirred at -30 to -35°C for 10 minutes. This was repeated once. The external cooling was stopped and the mixture warmed to ambient temp. over 4 to 16 hours when TLC (silica gel, 20% ethyl acetate/hexane) indicated that the reaction was completed. The reaction mixture was cooled to 10°C and quenched with 1452 g of 16% ammonium chloride solution (prepared by dissolving 232 g of ammonium chloride in 1220 mL of water), keeping the temperature below 23°C. The mixture was stirred for 10 minutes and the organic 20 and aqueous layers were separated. The aqueous phase was extracted with ethyl acetate (2x 500 mL). The ethyl acetate layer was combined with the tetrahydrofuran layer. The combined solution was dried over magnesium sulfate (220 g), filtered and concentrated on a rotary 25 evaporator at 65°C. The brown oil residue was dried at 70°C in vacuo (0.8 bar) for 1 h to give 222.8 g of crude material.

METHOD 4:

35 Following the same procedures as described in Method 3 of this Example except the reaction temperatures were at -20°C. The resulting N,N, α S-tris(phenylmethyl)-2S-

60

oxiranemethanamine was a diastereomeric mixture of lesser purity than that of Method 3.

METHOD 5:

5 Following the same procedures as described in Method 3 of this Example except the reaction temperatures were at -70--78°C. The resulting N,N, α S-tris(phenylmethyl)-2S-oxiranemethanamine was a diastereomeric mixture, which was used directly in the subsequent steps without
10 purification.

METHOD 6:

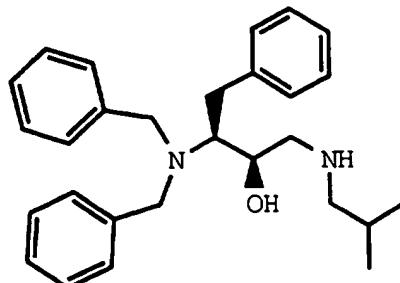
Following the same procedures as described in Method 3 of this Example except a continuous addition of
15 bromochloromethane and n-butyl lithium was used at -30 to -35°C. After the reaction and work up procedures as described in Method 3 of this Example, the desired N,N, α S-tris(phenylmethyl)-2S-oxiranemethanamine was isolated in comparable yields and purities.
20

METHOD 7:

Following the same procedures as described in Method 2 of this Example except dibromomethane was used instead of chloroiodomethane. After the reaction and work up
25 procedures as described in Method 2 of this Example, the desired N,N, α S-tris(phenylmethyl)-2S-oxirane-methanamine was isolated.

EXAMPLE 4

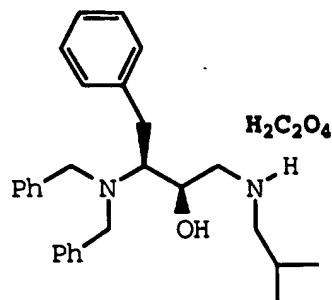
30



Preparation of N-[3(S)-[N,N-bis(phenylmethyl)aminol-2(R)-hydroxy-4-phenylbutyl]-N-isobutylamine

To a solution of crude N,N-dibenzyl-3(S)-amino-1,2(S)-epoxy-4-phenylbutane (388.5 g, 1.13 mol) in isopropanol (2.7 L) (or ethyl acetate) was added 5 isobutylamine (1.7 kgm, 23.1 mol) over 2 min. The temperature increased from 25°C and to 30°C. The solution was heated to 82°C and stirred at this temperature for 1.5 hours. The warm solution was concentrated under reduced pressure at 65°C. The brown 10 oil residue was transferred to a 3-L flask and dried in vacuo (0.8 mm Hg) for 16 h to give 450 g of 3S-[N,N-bis(phenylmethyl)amino]-4-phenylbutan-2R-ol as a crude oil.

15 An analytical sample of the desired major diastereomeric product was obtained by purifying a small sample of crude product by silica gel chromatography (40% ethyl acetate/hexane). Tlc analysis: silica gel, 40% ethyl acetate/hexane; R_f = 0.28; HPLC analysis: 20 ultrasphere ODS column, 25% triethylamino-/phosphate buffer pH 3-acetonitrile, flow rate 1 mL/min, UV detector; retention time 7.49 min.; HRMS Calcd for C₂₈H₂₇N₂O (M + 1) 417.616, found 417.2887. An analytical sample of the minor diastereomeric product, 3S-[N,N-bis(phenylmethyl)amino]1-(2-methylpropyl)amino-4-phenylbutan-2S-ol was also obtained by purifying a small 25 sample of crude product by silica gel chromatography (40% ethyl acetate/hexane).

EXAMPLE 5

5 Preparation of N-[3(S)-[N,N-bis(phenylmethyl)amino]-2(R)-hydroxy-4-phenylbutyl]-N-isobutylamine·oxalic acid salt

To a solution of oxalic acid (8.08g, 89.72 mmol) in methanol (76 mL) was added a solution of crude 3(S)-[N,N-bis(phenylmethyl)amino]-1-(2-methylpropyl)amino-4-phenylbutan-2(R)-ol {39.68g, which contains about 25.44g (61.06 mmol) of 3(S),2(R) isomer and about 4.49g (10.78 mmol) of 3(S),2(S) isomer} in ethyl acetate (90 mL) over 15 minutes. The mixture was stirred at room temperature for about 2 hours. Solid was isolated by filtration, washed with ethyl acetate (2 x 20 mL) and dried in vacuo for about 1 hour to yield 21.86g (70.7% isomer recovery) of 97% diastereomerically pure salt (based on HPLC peak areas). HPLC analysis: Vydec-peptide/protein C18 column, UV detector 254 nm, flow rate 2 mL/min., gradient {A = 0.05% trifluoroacetic acid in water, B = 0.05% trifluoroacetic acid in acetonitrile, 0 min. 75% A/25% B, 30 min. 10% A/90% B, 35 min. 10% A/90% B, 37 min. 75% A/25% B}; Retention time 10.68 min. (3(S),2(R) isomer) and 9.73 min. (3(S),2(S) isomer). $\text{Mp} = 174.99^\circ\text{C}$; Microanalysis: Calc.: C 71.05%, H 7.50%, N 5.53%; Found: C 71.71%, H 7.75%, N 5.39%.

Alternatively, oxalic acid dihydrate (119g, 0.94 mole) was added to a 5000 mL round bottom flask fitted with a mechanical stirrer and a dropping funnel.

Methanol (1000 mL) was added and the mixture stirred until dissolution was complete. A solution of crude 3(S)-[N,N-bis(phenylmethyl)amino]-1-(2-methylpropyl)amino-4-phenylbutan-2(R)-ol in ethyl acetate (1800 mL, 5 0.212g amino alcohol isomers/mL, 0.9160 moles) was added over a twenty minute period. The mixture was stirred for 18 hours and the solid product was isolated by centrifugation in six portions at 400G. Each portion was washed with 125 mL of ethyl acetate. The salt was then 10 collected and dried overnight at 1 torr to yield 336.3 g of product (71% based upon total amino alcohol). HPLC/MS (electrospray) was consistent with the desired product (m/z 417 [M+H]⁺).

15 Alternatively, crude 3(S)-[N,N-bis(phenylmethyl)amino]-1-(2-methylpropyl)amino-4-phenylbutan-2(R)-ol (5 g) was dissolved in methyl-tert-butylether (MTBE) (10 mL) and oxalic acid (1 g) in methanol (4 mL) was added. The mixture was stirred for about 2 hours. The resulting 20 solid was filtered, washed with cold MTBE and dried to yield 2.1 g of white solid of about 98.9% diastereomerically pure (based on HPLC peak areas).

EXAMPLE 6

25 Preparation of N-[3(S)-[N,N-bis(phenylmethyl)amino]-2(R)-hydroxy-4-phenylbutyl]-N-isobutylamine-acetic acid salt

To a solution of crude 3(S)-[N,N-bis(phenylmethyl)amino]-1-(2-methylpropyl)amino-4-phenylbutan-2(R)-ol in methyl-tert-butylether (MTBE) (45 mL, 1.1g amino alcohol isomers/mL) was added acetic acid (6.9 mL) dropwise. The mixture was stirred for about 1 hour at room temperature. The solvent was removed in vacuo to yield a brown oil 30 about 85% diastereomerically pure product (based on HPLC peak areas). The brown oil was crystallized as follows: 0.2 g of the oil was dissolved in the first solvent with

heat to obtain a clear solution, the second solvent was added until the solution became cloudy, the mixture was heated again to clarity, seeded with about 99% diastereomerically pure product, cooled to room 5 temperature and then stored in a refrigerator overnight. The crystals were filtered, washed with the second solvent and dried. The diastereomeric purity of the crystals was calculated from the HPLC peak areas. The results are shown in Table 1.

10

TABLE 1

First Solvent	Second Solvent	Solvent Ratio	Recovery Weight (g)	Diastereomeric Purity (%)
MTBE	Heptane	1:10	0.13	98.3
MTBE	Hexane	1:10	0.03	99.6
Methanol	Water	1:1.5	0.05	99.5
Toluene	Heptane	1:10	0.14	98.7
Toluene	Hexane	1:10	0.10	99.7

Alternatively, crude 3(S)-[N,N-bis(phenylmethyl) 15 amino]-1-(2-methylpropyl)amino-4-phenylbutan-2(R)-ol (50.0g, which contains about 30.06g (76.95 mmol) of 3(S),2(R) isomer and about 5.66g (13.58 mmol) of 3(S),2(S) isomer} was dissolved in methyl-tert-butylether (45.0 mL). To this solution was added acetic acid (6.90 20 mL, 120.6 mmol) over a period of about 10 min. The mixture was stirred at room temperature for about 1 hour and concentrated under reduced pressure. The oily residue was purified by recrystallization from methyl-tert-butylether (32 mL) and heptane (320 mL). Solid was 25 isolated by filtration, washed with cold heptane and dried in vacuo for about 1 hour to afford 21.34g (58.2% isomer recovery) of 96% diastereomerically pure monoacetic acid salt (based on HPLC peak areas). Mp = 105-106°C; Microanalysis: Calc.: C 75.53%, H 8.39%, N 30 5.87%; Found: C 75.05%, H 8.75%, N 5.71%.

EXAMPLE 7

5 Preparation of N-[3(S)-[N,N-bis(phenylmethyl)amino]-2(R)-hydroxy-4-phenylbutyl]-N-isobutylamine•L-tartaric acid salt

Crude 3(S)-[N,N-bis(phenylmethyl)amino]-1-(2-methylpropyl)amino-4-phenylbutan-2(R)-ol (10.48g, which contains about 6.72g (16.13 mmol) of 3(S),2(R) isomer and 10 about 1.19g (2.85 mmol) of 3(S),2(S) isomer) was dissolved in tetrahydrofuran (10.0 mL). To this solution was added a solution of L-tartaric acid (2.85g, 19 mmol) in methanol (5.0 mL) over a period of about 5 min. The mixture was stirred at room temperature for about 10 min. 15 and concentrated under reduced pressure. Methyl-tert-butylether (20.0 mL) was added to the oily residue and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for about 1 hour. Solid was isolated by filtration to afford 7.50g of crude salt. The crude salt was purified by 20 recrystallization from ethyl acetate and heptane at room temperature to yield 4.13g (45.2% isomer recovery) of 95% diastereomerically pure L-tartaric acid salt (based on HPLC peak areas). Microanalysis: Calc.: C 67.76%, H 7.41%, N 4.94%; Found: C 70.06%, H 7.47%, N 5.07%.

25

EXAMPLE 8

30 Preparation of N-[3(S)-[N,N-bis(phenylmethyl)amino]-2(R)-hydroxy-4-phenylbutyl]-N-isobutylamine•dihydrochloric acid salt

Crude 3(S)-[N,N-bis(phenylmethyl) amino]-1-(2-methylpropyl)amino-4-phenylbutan-2(R)-ol (10.0g, which contains about 6.41g (15.39 mmol) of 3(S),2(R) isomer and 35 about 1.13g (2.72 mmol) of 3(S),2(S) isomer) was dissolved in tetrahydrofuran (20.0 mL). To this solution was added hydrochloric acid (20 mL, 6.0 N) over a period of about 5

min. The mixture was stirred at room temperature for about 1 hour and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was recrystallized from ethanol at 0°C to yield 3.20g (42.7% isomer recovery) of 98% diastereomerically pure dihydrochloric acid salt (based on HPLC peak areas).
5 Microanalysis: Calc.: C 68.64%, H 7.76%, N 5.72%; Found: C 68.79%, H 8.07%, N 5.55%.

EXAMPLE 9

10

Preparation of N-[3(S)-[N,N-bis(phenylmethyl)aminol-2(R)-hydroxy-4-phenylbutyl]-N-isobutylamine•toluenesulfonic acid salt

15 Crude 3(S)-[N,N-bis(phenylmethyl) amino]-1-(2-methylpropyl)amino-4-phenylbutan-2(R)-ol (5.0g, which contains about 3.18g (7.63 mmol) of 3(S),2(R) isomer and about 0.56g (1.35 mmol) of 3(S),2(S) isomer} was dissolved in methyl-tert-butylether (10.0 mL). To this
20 solution was added a solution of toluenesulfonic acid (2.28g, 12 mmol) in methyl-tert-butylether (2.0 mL) and methanol (2.0 mL) over a period of about 5 min. The mixture was stirred at room temperature for about 2 hours and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was
25 recrystallized from methyl-tert-butylether and heptane at 0°C, filtered, washed with cold heptane and dried in vacuo to yield 1.85g (40.0% isomer recovery) of 97% diastereomerically pure monotoluenesulfonic acid salt (based on HPLC peak areas).

30

EXAMPLE 10

35 Preparation of N-[3(S)-[N,N-bis(phenylmethyl)aminol-2(R)-hydroxy-4-phenylbutyl]-N-isobutylamine•methanesulfonic acid salt

Crude 3(S)-[N,N-bis(phenylmethyl) amino]-1-(2-methylpropyl)amino-4-phenylbutan-2(R)-ol (10.68g, which contains about 6.85g (16.44 mmol) of 3(S),2(R) isomer and about 1.21g (2.90 mmol) of 3(S),2(S) isomer) was dissolved in tetrahydrofuran (10.0 mL). To this solution was added methanesulfonic acid (1.25 mL, 19.26 mmol). The mixture was stirred at room temperature for about 2 hours and concentrated under reduced pressure. The oily residue was recrystallized from methanol and water at 0°C, filtered, washed with cold methanol/water (1:4) and dried in vacuo to yield 2.40g (28.5% isomer recovery) of 98% diastereomerically pure monomethanesulfonic acid salt (based on HPLC peak areas).

15

EXAMPLE 11Preparation of N-benzyl-L-phenylalaninol

METHOD 1:

20 L-Phenylalaninol (89.51 g, 0.592 moles) was dissolved in 375 mL of methanol under inert atmosphere, 35.52 g (0.592 moles) of glacial acetic acid and 50 mL of methanol was added followed by a solution of 62.83 g (0.592 moles) of benzaldehyde in 100 mL of methanol. The 25 mixture was cooled to approximately 15°C and a solution of 134.6 g (2.14 moles) of sodium cyanoborohydride in 700 mL of methanol was added in approximately 40 minutes, keeping the temperature between 15°C and 25°C. The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 18 hours.

30 The mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure and partitioned between 1 L of 2M ammonium hydroxide solution and 2 L of ether. The ether layer was washed with 1 L of 1M ammonium hydroxide solution, twice with 500 mL water, 500 mL of brine and dried over magnesium sulfate for 1 hour. The ether layer was filtered, concentrated under reduced pressure and the crude solid product was recrystallized from 110 mL of ethyl acetate and 1.3 L of

hexane to give 115 g (81% yield) of N-benzyl-L-phenylalaninol as a white solid.

METHOD 2:

5 L-Phenylalaninol (5 g, 33 mmoles) and 3.59 g (33.83 mmoles) of benzaldehyde were dissolved in 55 mL of 3A ethanol under inert atmosphere in a Parr shaker and the mixture was warmed to 60°C for 2.7 hours. The mixture was cooled to approximately 25°C and 0.99 g of 5%
10 platinum on carbon was added and the mixture was hydrogenated at 60 psi of hydrogen and 40°C for 10 hours. The catalyst was filtered off, the product was concentrated under reduced pressure and the crude solid product was recrystallized from 150 mL of heptane to give
15 3.83 g (48 % yield) of N-benzyl-L-phenylalaninol as a white solid.

EXAMPLE 12

20 Preparation of N-(t-Butoxycarbonyl)-N-benzyl-L-phenylalaninol

N-benzyl-L-phenylalaninol (2.9 g, 12 mmoles) was dissolved in 3 mL of triethylamine and 27 mL of methanol
25 and 5.25 g (24.1 mmoles) of di-tert-butyl dicarbonate was added. The mixture was warmed to 60°C for 35 minutes and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was dissolved in 150 mL of ethyl acetate and washed twice with 10 mL of cold (0-5°C), dilute hydrochloric acid (pH
30 2.5 to 3), 15 mL of water, 10 mL of brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The crude product oil was purified by silica gel chromatography (ethyl acetate: hexane, 12:3 as eluting solvent) to give 3.98 g (97% yield) of colorless
35 oil.

EXAMPLE 13Preparation of N-(t-Butoxycarbonyl)-N-benzyl-L-phenylalaninal

5

METHOD 1:

To a solution of 0.32 g(0.94 mmoles) of N-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-N-benzyl-L-phenylalaninol in 2.8 mL of toluene was added 2.4 mg (0.015 mmoles) of 2,2,6,6-tetramethyl-1-piperidinyloxy, free radical (TEMPO), 0.1g (0.97 mmoles) of sodium bromide, 2.8 mL of ethyl acetate and 0.34 mL of water. The mixture was cooled to 0 °C and an aqueous solution of 4.2 mL of 5% household bleach containing 0.23 g (3.0 mL, 2.738 mmoles) of sodium bicarbonate was added slowly over 30 minutes. The mixture was stirred at 0 °C for 10 minutes. Three more additions (0.4 mL each) of bleach was added followed by stirring for 10 minutes after each addition to consume all the starting material. The two phase mixture was allowed to separate. The aqueous layer was extracted twice with 8 mL of toluene. The combined organic layer was washed with 1.25 mL of a solution containing 0.075 g of potassium iodide, sodium bisulfate(0.125 g) and water(1.1 mL), 1.25 mL of 10% aqueous sodium thiosulfate solution, 1.25 mL of pH 7 phosphate buffer and 1.5 mL of brine solution. The organic solution was dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure to give 0.32 g (100% yield) of N-(t-Butoxycarbonyl)-N-benzyl-L-phenylalaninal.

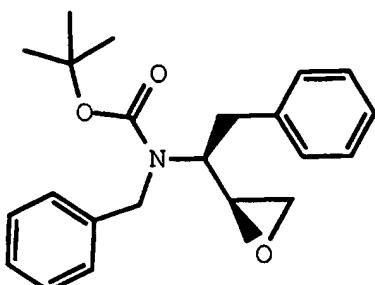
30

METHOD 2:

To a solution of 2.38 g(6.98 mmoles) of N-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-N-benzyl-L-phenylalaninol in 3.8 mL (27.2 mmoles) of triethylamine at 10 °C was added a solution of 4.33 g (27.2 mmoles) of sulfur trioxide pyridine complex in 17 mL of dimethyl sulfoxide. The mixture was warmed to room temperature and stirred for one hour. Water (16

mL) was added and the mixture was extracted with 20 mL of ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with 20 mL of 5% citric acid, 20 mL of water, 20 mL of brine, dried over magnesium sulfate and filtered. The filtrate was 5 concentrated under reduced pressure to give 2.37 g (100% yield) of N-(t-Butoxycarbonyl)-N-benzyl-L-phenylalaninal.

EXAMPLE 14



10

Preparation of 3(S)-[N-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-N-benzylaminol-1,2-(S)-epoxy-4-phenylbutane

METHOD 1:

15 A solution of 2.5 g (7.37 mmoles) of N-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-N-benzyl-L-phenylalaninal and 0.72 mL of chloroiodomethane in 35 mL of THF was cooled to -78°C. A 4.64 mL of a solution of n-butyllithium (1.6 M in hexane, 7.42 mmoles) was added slowly, keeping the temperature 20 below -70°C. The mixture was stirred for 10 minutes between -70 to -75°C. Two additional portions of 0.22 mL of chloroiodomethane and 1.4 mL of n-butyllithium was added sequentially and the mixture was stirred for 10 minutes between -70 to -75 °C after each addition. Four 25 additional portions of 0.11 mL of chloroiodomethane and 0.7 mL of n-butyllithium was added sequentially and the mixture was stirred for 10 minutes between -70 to -75°C after each addition. The mixture was warmed to room temperature for 3.5 hours. The product was quenched at 30 below 5°C with 24 mL of ice-cold water. The biphasic layers were separated and the aqueous layer was extracted

twice with 30 mL of ethyl acetate. The combined organic layers was washed three times with 10 mL water, then with 10 mL brine, dried over sodium sulfate, filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure to give 2.8 g of a 5 yellow crude oil. This crude oil (>100% yield) is a mixture of the diastereomeric epoxides N, α S-bis(phenylmethyl)-N-(*t*-butoxycarbonyl)-2S-oxiranemethanamine and N, α S-bis(phenylmethyl)-N-(*t*-butoxycarbonyl)-2R-oxiranemethanamine. The crude mixture 10 is used directly in the next step without purification.

METHOD 2:

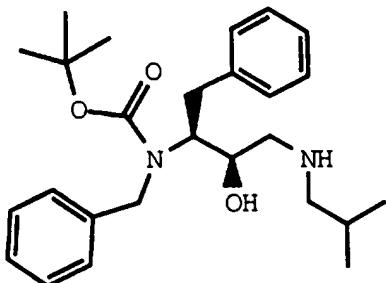
To a suspension of 2.92 g (13.28 mmoles) of trimethylsulfoxonium iodide in 45 mL of acetonitrile was 15 added 1.49 g (13.28 mmoles) of potassium *t*-butoxide. A solution of 3.0 g (8.85 mmoles) of N-(*t*-butoxycarbonyl)-N-benzyl-L-phenylalaninal in 18 mL of acetonitrile was added and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for one hour. The mixture was diluted with 150 mL of water 20 and extracted twice with 200 mL of ethyl acetate. The organic layers were combined and washed with 100 mL water, 50 mL brine, dried over sodium sulfate, filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure to give 3.0 g of a yellow crude oil. The crude product was purified by 25 silica gel chromatography (ethyl acetate/hexane: 1: 8 as eluting solvent) to give 1.02 g (32.7% yield) of a mixture of the two diastereomers N, α S-bis(phenylmethyl)-N-(*t*-butoxycarbonyl)-2S-oxiranemethanamine and N, α S-bis(phenylmethyl)-N-(*t*-butoxycarbonyl)-2R-oxiranemethanamine. 30

METHOD 3:

To a suspension of 0.90 g (4.42 mmoles) of trimethylsulfonium iodide in 18 mL of acetonitrile was 35 added 0.495 g (4.42 mmoles) of potassium *t*-butoxide. A solution of 1.0 g (2.95 mmoles) of N-(*t*-butoxycarbonyl)-N-benzyl-L-phenylalaninal in 7 mL of acetonitrile was

added and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for one hour. The mixture was diluted with 80 mL of water and extracted twice with 80 mL of ethyl acetate. The organic layers were combined and washed with 100 mL 5 water, 30 mL brine, dried over sodium sulfate, filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure to give 1.04 g of a yellow crude oil. The crude product was a mixture of the two diastereomers N, α S-bis(phenylmethyl)-N-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-2S-oxiranemethanamine and N, α S-10 bis(phenylmethyl)-N-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-2R-oxiranemethanamine.

EXAMPLE 15



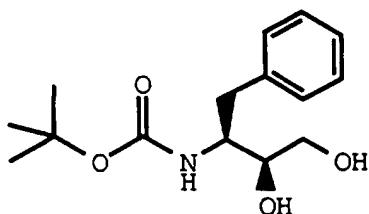
15

Preparation of 3S-[N-(t-Butoxycarbonyl)-N-(phenylmethyl)amino]-1-(2-methylpropyl)amino-4-phenylbutan-2R-ol

To a solution of 500 mg (1.42 mmoles) of the crude 20 epoxide (a mixture of the two diastereomers N, α S-bis(phenylmethyl)-N-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-2S-oxiranemethanamine and N, α S-bis(phenylmethyl)-N-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-2R-oxiranemethanamine) in 0.98 mL of isopropanol was added 0.71 mL (7.14 mmoles) of 25 isobutylamine. The mixture was warmed to reflux at 85°C to 90°C for 1.5 hours. The mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure and the product oil was purified by silica gel chromatography (chloroform:methanol, 100:6 as eluting solvents) to give 330 mg of 3S-[N-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-N-(phenylmethyl)amino]-1-(2-30 methylpropyl)amino-4-phenylbutan-2R-ol as a colorless oil

(54.5% yield). 3S-[N-(t-Butoxycarbonyl)-N-(phenylmethyl)amino]-1-(2-methylpropyl)amino-4-phenylbutan-2S-ol was also isolated. When purified N, α S-bis(phenylmethyl)-N-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-2S-oxiranemethanamine was used as starting material, 3S-[N-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-N-(phenylmethyl)amino]-1-(2-methylpropyl)amino-4-phenylbutan-2R-ol was isolated after purification by chromatography in an 86% yield.

10

EXAMPLE 16Preparation of 3S-(N-t-Butoxycarbonyl)amino-4-phenylbutan-1,2R-diol

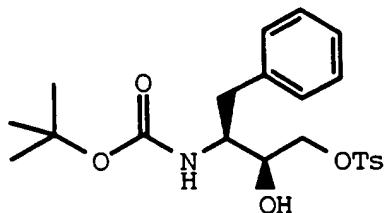
15

To a solution of 1 g (3.39 mmoles) of 2S-(N-t-butoxycarbonyl)amino-1S-hydroxy-3-phenylbutanoic acid (commercially available from Nippon Kayaku, Japan) in 50 mL of THF at 0 °C was added 50 mL of borane-THF complex (liquid, 1.0 M in THF), keeping the temperatures below 5°C. The reaction mixture was warmed to room temperature and stirred for 16 hours. The mixture was cooled to 0 °C and 20 mL of water was added slowly to destroy the excess BH₃ and to quench the product mixture, keeping the temperature below 12°C. The quenched mixture was stirred for 20 minutes and concentrated under reduced pressure. The product mixture was extracted three times with 60 mL of ethyl acetate. The organic layers were combined and washed with 20 mL of water, 25 mL of saturated sodium chloride solution and concentrated under reduced pressure to give 1.1 g of crude oil. The crude product was purified by silica gel chromatography (chloroform/methanol, 10:6 as eluting solvents) to give

900 mg (94.4% yield) of 3S-(N-t-butoxycarbonyl)amino-4-phenylbutan-1,2R-diol as a white solid.

EXAMPLE 17

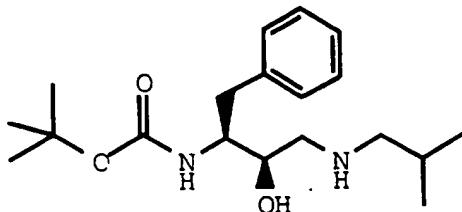
5



Preparation of 3S-(N-t-Butoxycarbonyl)amino-2R-hydroxy-4-phenylbut-1-yl Toluenesulfonate

10 To a solution of 744.8 mg (2.65 mmoles) of 3S-(N-t-butoxycarbonyl)amino-4-phenylbutan-1,2R-diol in 13 mL of pyridine at 0 °C was added 914 mg of toluenesulfonyl chloride in one portion. The mixture was stirred at 0 °C to 5°C for 5 hours. A mixture of 6.5 mL of ethyl acetate and 15 mL of 5% aqueous sodium bicarbonate solution was added to the reaction mixture and stirred for 5 minutes. The product mixture was extracted three times with 50 mL of ethyl acetate. The organic layers were combined and washed with 15 mL of water, 10 mL of saturated sodium chloride solution and concentrated under reduced pressure to give about 1.1 g of a yellow chunky solid. The crude product was purified by silica gel chromatography (ethyl acetate/hexane 1:3 as eluting solvents) to give 850 mg (74% yield) of 3S-(N-t-butoxycarbonyl)amino-2R-hydroxy-4-phenylbut-1-yl toluenesulfonate as a white solid.

EXAMPLE 18



Preparation of 3S-[N-(t-Butoxycarbonyl)amino]-1-(2-methylpropyl)amino-4-phenylbutan-2R-ol

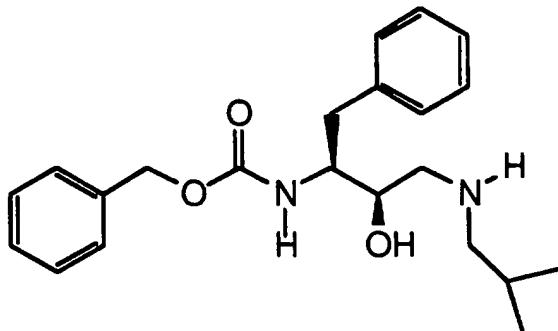
To a solution of 90 mg (0.207 mmoles) of 3S-(N-t-

5 butoxycarbonyl)amino-2R-hydroxy-4-phenylbut-1-yl toluenesulfonate in 0.143 mL of isopropanol and 0.5 mL of toluene was added 0.103 mL (1.034 mmoles) of isobutylamine. The mixture was warmed to 80 to 85 °C and stirred for 1.5 hours. The product mixture was

10 concentrated under reduced pressure at 40 to 50 °C and purified by silica gel chromatography (chloroform/methanol, 10:1 as eluting solvents) to give 54.9 mg (76.8% yield) of 3S-[N-(t-butoxycarbonyl)amino]-1-(2-methylpropyl)amino-4-phenylbutan-2R-ol as a white

15 solid.

EXAMPLE 19



20

Preparation of N-[3(S)-benzyloxycarbonylamino-2(R)-hydroxy-4-phenylbutyl]-N-isobutylamine

Part A:

25 To a solution of 75.0g (0.226 mol) of N-benzyloxycarbonyl-L-phenylalanine chloromethyl ketone in a mixture of 807 mL of methanol and 807 mL of tetrahydrofuran at -2°C, was added 13.17g (0.348 mol, 1.54 equiv.) of solid sodium borohydride over one hundred

30 minutes. The solvents were removed under reduced pressure at 40°C and the residue dissolved in ethyl

acetate (approx. 1L). The solution was washed sequentially with 1M potassium hydrogen sulfate, saturated sodium bicarbonate and then saturated sodium chloride solutions. After drying over anhydrous 5 magnesium sulfate and filtering, the solution was removed under reduced pressure. To the resulting oil was added hexane (approx. 1L) and the mixture warmed to 60°C with swirling. After cooling to room temperature, the solids were collected and washed with 2L of hexane. The 10 resulting solid was recrystallized from hot ethyl acetate and hexane to afford 32.3g (43% yield) of N-benzyloxycarbonyl-3(S)-amino-1-chloro-4-phenyl-2(S)-butanol, mp 150-151°C and M⁺Li⁺ = 340.

15 Part B:

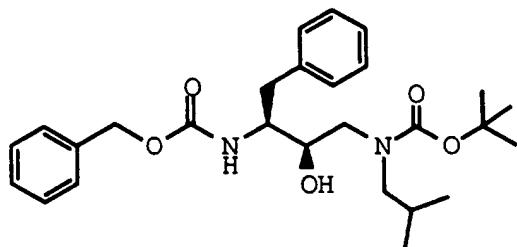
To a solution of 6.52g (0.116 mol, 1.2 equiv.) of potassium hydroxide in 968 mL of absolute ethanol at room temperature, was added 32.3g (0.097 mol) of N-CBZ-3(S)-amino-1-chloro-4-phenyl-2(S)-butanol. After stirring for 20 fifteen minutes, the solvent was removed under reduced pressure and the solids dissolved in methylene chloride. After washing with water, drying over magnesium sulfate, filtering and stripping, one obtains 27.9g of a white solid. Recrystallization from hot ethyl acetate and 25 hexane afforded 22.3g (77% yield) of N-benzyloxycarbonyl-3(S)-amino-1,2(S)-epoxy-4-phenylbutane, mp 102-103°C and MH⁺ 298.

Part C:

30 A solution of N-benzyloxycarbonyl 3(S)-amino-1,2-(S)-epoxy-4-phenylbutane (1.00g, 3.36 mmol) and isobutylamine (4.90g, 67.2 mmol, 20 equiv.) in 10 mL of isopropyl alcohol was heated to reflux for 1.5 hours. The solution was cooled to room temperature, concentrated 35 in vacuo and then poured into 100 mL of stirring hexane whereupon the product crystallized from solution. The product was isolated by filtration and air dried to give

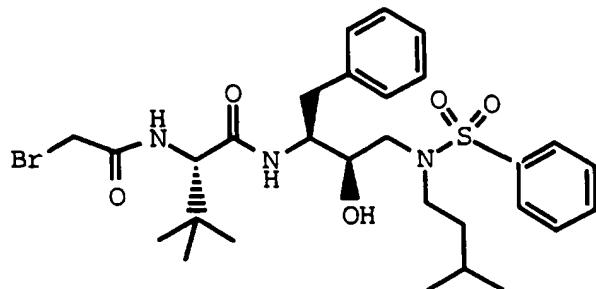
1.18g, 95% of N-[3(S)-phenylmethylcarbamoyl]amino-2(R)-hydroxy-4-phenylbutyl]N-[(2-methylpropyl)]amine,
C₂₂H₃₀N₂O₃, mp 108.0-109.5°C, MH⁺ m/z = 371.

5

EXAMPLE 20

10 Preparation of N-[1,1-dimethylethoxyl]carbonyl-N-[2-
methylpropyl]-3S-[N¹-(phenylmethoxycarbonyl)amino]-2R-
hydroxy-4-phenylbutylamine

To a solution of 7.51g (20.3 mmol) of N-[3S-
15 [(phenylmethoxycarbonyl)amino]-2R-hydroxy-4-phenylbutyl]-
2-methylpropylamine in 67 mL of anhydrous tetrahydrofuran
was added 2.25g (22.3 mmol) of triethylamine. After
cooling to 0°C, 4.4g (20.3 mmol) of di-tert-
butyldicarbonate was added and stirring continued at room
temperature for 21 hours. The volatiles were removed in
20 vacuo, ethyl acetate added, then washed with 5% citric
acid, saturated sodium bicarbonate, brine, dried over
magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated to afford
9.6g of crude product. Chromatography on silica gel
using 30% ethyl acetate/hexane afforded 8.2g of pure N-
25 [[3S-(phenylmethylcarbamoyl)amino]-2R-hydroxy-4-phenyl]-
1-[(2-methylpropyl)amino-2-(1,1-
dimethylethoxyl)carbonyl]butane, mass spectrum m/e = 477
(M+Li).

EXAMPLE 21

5 Preparation of 2S-[[(bromoacetyl)aminol-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[N1-(3-methylbutyl)-N1-(phenylsulfonyl)aminol-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]3,3-dimethylbutaneamide

Part A:

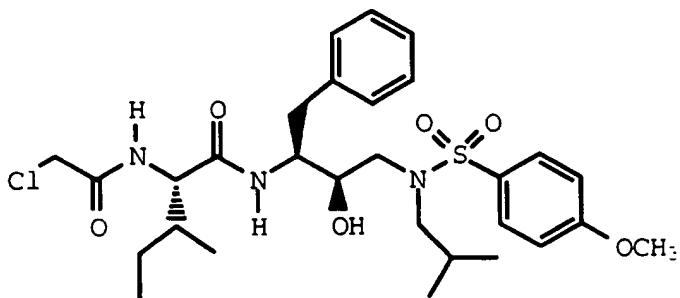
10 To a solution of N-CBZ-L-tert-leucine (450 mg, 1.7 mmol) and N-hydroxybenzotriazole (260 mg, 1.7 mmol) in DMF (10 mL) was added EDC (307 mg, 1.6 mmol). The solution was stirred for 60 minutes at room temperature and then 2R-hydroxy-3-[N-(3-methylbutyl)-N-(phenylsulfonyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propylamine (585 mg, 1.5 mmol) in DMF (2 mL) was added. The reaction was stirred for 16 hours at room temperature, then poured into a 50% saturated solution of sodium bicarbonate (200 mL). The aqueous mixture was extracted thrice with ethyl acetate (50 mL). The combined ethyl acetate layers were washed with water (50 mL) and saturated NaCl solution (50 mL), then dried over magnesium sulfate. Filtration and concentration produced an oil which was chromatographed on silica gel (50 gm) eluting with 20% ethyl acetate in hexane. The phenylmethyl [1S-[[2R-hydroxy-3-[(3-methylbutyl) (phenylsulfonyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]amino] carbonyl]-2,2-dimethylpropyl carbamate was obtained as a solid Anal. Calcd for C₃₅H₄₇N₃O₆S: C, 65.91; H, 7.43; N, 6.59. Found: C, 65.42; H, 7.24; N, 6.55.

Part B:

A solution of phenylmethyl [1S-[[[2R-hydroxy-3-[(3-methylbutyl)(phenylsulfonyl)-amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]amino]carbonyl]-2,2-dimethylpropyl]carbamate (200 mg, 0.31 mmol) in methanol (15 mL) was hydrogenated over 10% palladium on carbon for 2 hours. The reaction was filtered through diatomaceous earth and concentrated to an oil.

10 Part C:

The resulting free amine from part B (150 mg, 0.3 mmol) was combined with diisopropylethylamine (114 uL, 0.33 mmol) in dichloromethane (5 mL). To this was added bromoacetyl chloride (27 uL, 0.33 mmol) dropwise. The 15 reaction was stirred for 30 minutes at room temperature, then diluted with dichloromethane (30 mL) and extracted with 1 N HCl, water, and then saturated NaCl solution (25 mL each). The organic solution was dried over MgSO₄ and concentrated to a solid. The 2S-[(bromoacetyl)amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(3-methylbutyl)(phenylsulfonyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethylbutaneamide was 20 sufficiently pure for use in the next step. This material can also be prepared by substituting bromoacetic anhydride for bromoacetyl chloride, or one can use 25 chloroacetyl chloride or chloracetic anhydride.

EXAMPLE 22

Preparation of 2S-[chloroacetylaminol-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[N¹-(2-methylpropyl)-N¹-(4-methoxyphenylsulfonyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methylpentanamide

5 Part A:

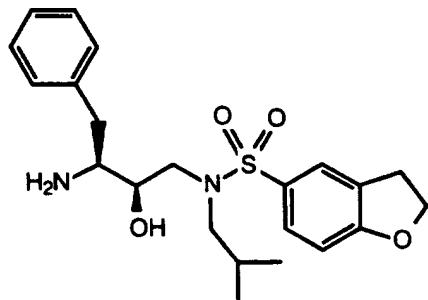
To a solution of 2R-hydroxy-3-[(2-methylpropyl)-(4-methoxyphenylsulfonyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propylamine (1.70 g, 4.18 mmol) in 40 mL of dichloromethane was added N-carbobenzyloxy-L-isoleucine-10 N-hydroxysuccinamide ester (1.51 g, 4.18 mmol) and the solution stirred under nitrogen atmosphere for 16 hours. The contents were concentrated in vacuo and the residue was redissolved in ethyl acetate. The ethyl acetate solution was washed with an aqueous solution of 5% KHSO₄, 15 saturated sodium bicarbonate, and saturated sodium chloride, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated to yield 2.47g of crude product. The product was purified by silica gel chromatography using 1 2:1 hexane:ethyl acetate eluant to yield 2.3 g. (84% 20 yield) of 2S-[(carbobenzyloxy)amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(3-methylpropyl)(4-methoxyphenylsulfonyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methylpentanamide.

Part B:

25 (1.18 g, 1.8 mmol) of the product from Part A was dissolved in 50 mL of methanol, and to this was added 250 mg of 10% Palladium on Carbon while under a stream of nitrogen. The suspension was hydrogenated using 50 psig of hydrogen for 20 hours. The contents were purged with 30 nitrogen and filtered through celite, and concentrated in vacuo to yield 935 mg of 2S-(amino)-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(3-methylpropyl)(4-methoxyphenylsulfonyl) amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methylpentanamide, which was used without further purification.

Part C:

(0.935 g, 1.8 mmol) of the amine from Part B was dissolved in 15 mL of dioxane and to this was added (190 mg, 1.85 mmol) of 4-methylmorpholine followed by (0.315 g, 5 1.8 mmol) of chloroacetic anhydride. The reaction mixture was stirred under nitrogen atmosphere for 3 hours, concentrated in vacuo, and redissolved in ethyl acetate. The ethyl acetate solution was washed with 50 mL of 5% aqueous KHSO₄, saturated NaHCO₃, and saturated 10 NaCl solution, dried over MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated to yield 613 mg, (68% yield) of 2S-[(chloroacetyl)amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(3-methylpropyl) 15 (4-methoxyphenylsulfonyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methylpentanamide, after purification by silica gel chromatography using 1:1 hexane:ethyl acetate.

EXAMPLE 23

20 Preparation of 2R-hydroxy-3-[(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)aminol-1S-(phenylmethyl)propylamine

Part A: Preparation of 5-(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl)sulfonyl chloride
25

To a solution of 3.35g of anhydrous N,N-dimethylformamide at 0°C under nitrogen was added 6.18 g of sulfonyl chloride, whereupon a solid formed. After stirring for 30 15 minutes, 4.69 g of 2,3-dihydrobenzofuran was added, and the mixture heated at 100°C for 2 hours. The

reaction was cooled, poured into ice water, extracted with methylene chloride, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated the crude material. This was recrystallized from ethyl acetate to afford 2.45 g of 5-
5 (2,3-dihydrobenzofuranyl)sulfonyl chloride.

Part B: Preparation of Carbamic acid, 2R-hydroxy-3-[[(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl-, phenylmethyl ester
10

To a solution of 1.11 g (3.0 mmol) of N-[3S-benzyloxy carbonylamino-2R-hydroxy-4-phenyl]-N-isobutylamine in 20mL of anhydrous methylene chloride, was added 1.3mL (0.94 g, 9.3 mmol) of triethylamine. The solution was
15 cooled to 0°C and 0.66 g of 5-(2,3-dihydrobenzofuranyl) sulfonyl chloride was added, stirred for 15 minutes at 0°C, then for 2 hour at room temperature. Ethyl acetate was added, washed with 5% citric acid, saturated sodium bicarbonate, brine, dried and concentrated to yield 1.62
20 g of crude material. This was recrystallized from diethyl ether to afford 1.17 g of pure carbamic acid, [2R-hydroxy-3-[(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl-, phenylmethyl ester.
25

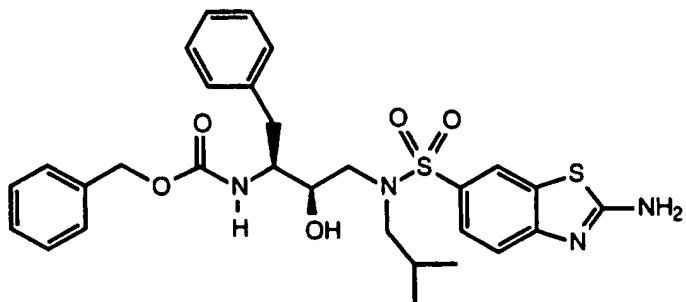
Part C: Preparation of [2R-hydroxy-3-[(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propylamine
30

A solution of 2.86 g of carbamic acid, [2R-hydroxy-3-[(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl-, phenylmethyl ester in 30 mL of tetrahydrofuran was hydrogenated 0.99g of 10% palladium-on-carbon under 50 psig of hydrogen for 16
35 hours. The catalyst was removed by filtration and the filtrate concentrated to afford 1.99 g of the desired

[2R-hydroxy-3-[[[(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propylamine.

EXAMPLE 24

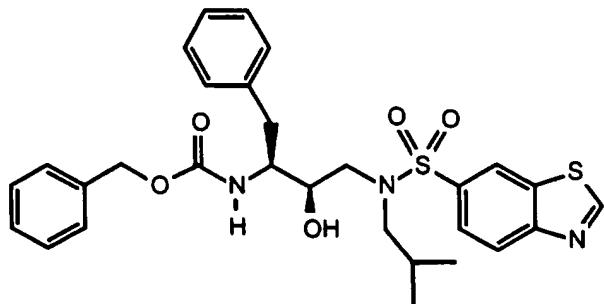
5



Preparation of Carbamic acid, 2R-hydroxy-3-[[2-aminobenzothiazol-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)aminol-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl-, phenylmethyl ester

Carbamic acid, 2R-hydroxy-3-[[[(4-aminophenyl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl-, phenylmethyl ester 0.30 g (0.571 mmol) was added to a well mixed powder of anhydrous copper sulfate (1.20 g) and potassium thiocyanate (1.50 g) followed by dry methanol (6 mL) and the resulting black-brown suspension was heated at reflux for 2 hrs. The reaction mixture was filtered and the filtrate was diluted with water (5 mL) and heated at reflux. Ethanol was added to the reaction mixture, cooled and filtered. The filtrate upon concentration afforded a residue which was chromatographed (ethyl acetate:hexane 80:20) to afford 0.26 g (78%) of the desired compound as a solid.

25

EXAMPLE 25

5 Preparation of Carbamic acid, 2R-hydroxy-3-[(1-(benzothiazol-6-yl)sulfonyl)(2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl-, phenylmethyl ester

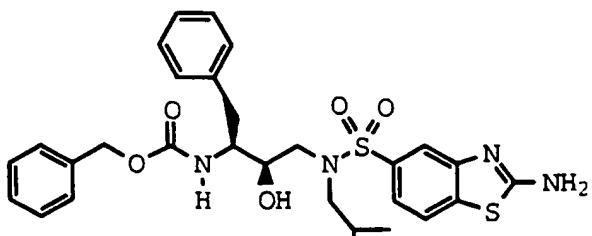
Method 1:

10 Carbamic acid, 2R-hydroxy-3-[(2-aminobenzothiazol-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl-, phenylmethyl ester (0.25 g, 0.429 mmol) was added to a solution of isoamyl nitrite (0.116 mL, 0.858 mmol) in dioxane (5 mL) and the mixture was heated at
15 85°C. After the cessation of evolution of nitrogen, the reaction mixture was concentrated and the residue was purified by chromatography (hexane:ethyl acetate 5:3) to afford 0.130 g (53%) of the desired product as a solid.

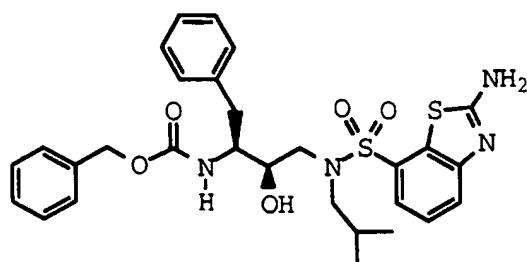
20 Method 2:

Crude benzothiazole-6-sulfonyl chloride in ethyl acetate (100 mL) was added to N-[3S-benzyloxycarbonyl amino-2R-hydroxy-4-phenyl]-N-isobutylamine (1.03 g, 2.78 mmol) followed by N-methylmorpholine (4 mL). After
25 stirring at room temperature for 18 hr., the reaction mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate (100 mL), washed with citric acid (5%, 100 mL), sodium bicarbonate (saturated, 100 mL) and brine (100 mL), dried ($MgSO_4$) and concentrated in vacuo. The residue was chromatographed
30 (silica gel, ethyl acetate: hexane 1:1) to afford 0.340 g (23%) of desired product.

Example 26



and



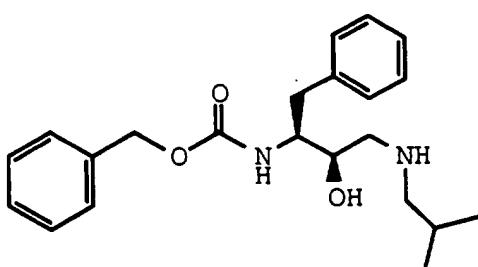
5

Preparation of Carbamic acid, 2R-hydroxy-3-[[(2-amino
benzothiazol-5-vl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)aminol-1S-
(phenylmethyl)propyl-, phenylmethyl ester; and Carbamic
acid, 2R-hydroxy-3-[[(2-aminobenzothiazol-7-vl)sulfonyl]
10 (2-methylpropyl)aminol-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl-
phenylmethyl ester

The carbamic acid, 2R-hydroxy-3-[(3-aminophenylsulfonyl) (2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl-
15 phenylmethyl ester 0.36 g (0.685 mmol) was added to a well mixed powder of anhydrous copper sulfate (1.44 g) and potassium thiocyanate (1.80 g) followed by dry methanol (10 mL) and the resulting black-brown suspension was heated at reflux for 2 hrs. The reaction mixture was
20 filtered and the filtrate was diluted with water (5 mL) and heated at reflux. Ethanol was added to the reaction mixture, cooled and filtered. The filtrate upon concentration afforded a residue which was chromatographed (ethyl acetate:hexane 1:1) to afford 0.18

g (45%) of the 7-isomer as a solid. Further elution of the column with (ethyl acetate:hexane 3:2) afforded 0.80 g (20%) afforded the 5-isomer as a solid.

5

EXAMPLE 27

Preparation of N-[3(S)-benzyloxycarbonylamo-2(R)-hydroxy-4-phenyl]N-isobutylamine

Part A: N-benzyloxycarbonyl-3(S)-amino-1-chloro-4-phenyl-2(S)-butanol

To a solution of N-benzyloxycarbonyl-L-phenylalanine

15 chloromethyl ketone (75 g, 0.2 mol) in a mixture of 800 mL of methanol and 800 mL of tetrahydrofuran was added sodium borohydride (13.17 g, 0.348 mol, 1.54 equiv.) over 100 min. The solution was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours and then concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue

20 was dissolved in 1000 mL of ethyl acetate and washed with 1N KHSO₄, saturated aqueous NaHCO₃, saturated aqueous NaCl, dried over anhydrous MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated *in vacuo* to give an oil. The crude product was dissolved in 1000 mL of hexanes at 60°C and allowed

25 to cool to room temperature where upon crystals formed that were isolated by filtration and washed with copious amounts of hexanes. This solid was then recrystallized from hot ethyl acetate and hexanes to provide 32.3 g 43% of N-benzyloxycarbonyl-3(S)-amino-1-chloro-4-phenyl-2(S)-butanol, mp 150-151°C, FAB MS: MLi⁺ = 340.

Part B: 3(S)-[N-(benzyloxycarbonyl)amino]-1,2(S)-epoxy-4-phenylbutane

A solution of potassium hydroxide (6.52 g. 0.116 mol, 1.2 equiv.) in 970 mL of absolute ethanol was treated with N-5 benzyloxycarbonyl-3(S)-amino-1-chloro-4-phenyl-2(S)-butanol (32.3 g, 0.097 mol). This solution was stirred at room temperature for 15 minutes and then concentrated in vacuo to give a white solid. The solid was dissolved in dichloromethane and washed with water, dried over 10 anhyd MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated in vacuo to give a white solid. The solid was crystallized from hexanes and ethyl acetate to give 22.3 g, 77% of 3(S)-[N-(benzyloxycarbonyl) amino]-1,2(S)-epoxy-4-phenylbutane, mp 102-103°C, FAB MS: MH⁺ = 298.

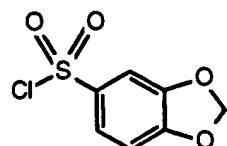
15

Part C: N-[3(S)-benzyloxycarbonylamino-2(R)-hydroxy-4-phenyl]N-isobutylamine

A solution of N-benzylcarbonyl-3(S)-amino-1,2-(S)-epoxy-4-phenyl butane (50.0 g, 0.168 mol) and isobutylamine 20 (246 g, 3.24 mol, 20 equivalents) in 650 mL of isopropyl alcohol was heated to reflux for 1.25 hours. The solution was cooled to room temperature, concentrated in vacuo and then poured into 1 L of stirring hexane whereupon the product crystallized from solution. The 25 product was isolated by filtration and air dried to give 57.56 g, 92% of N[3(S)-benzyloxycarbonylamino-2(R)-hydroxy-4-phenyl]-N-isobutylamine, mp 108.0-109.5°C, MH⁺ m/z=371.

30

EXAMPLE 28



Preparation of 1,3-benzodioxole-5-sulfonyl chloride

Method 1:

To a solution of 4.25 g of anhydrous N,N-dimethylformamide at 0°C under nitrogen was added 7.84g of sulfonyl chloride, whereupon a solid formed. After 5 stirring for 15 minutes, 6.45 g of 1,3-benzodioxole was added, and the mixture heated at 100°C for 2 hours. The reaction was cooled, poured into ice water, extracted with methylene chloride, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated to give 7.32 g of crude 10 material as a black oil. This was chromatographed on silica gel using 20% methylene chloride/hexane to afford 1.9 g of (1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl chloride.

Method 2:

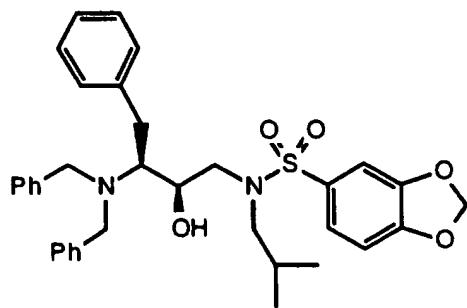
15 To a 22 liter round bottom flask fitted with a mechanical stirrer, a cooling condenser, a heating mantle and a pressure equalizing dropping funnel was added sulfur trioxide DMF complex (2778g, 18.1 moles). Dichloroethane (4 liters) was then added and stirring 20 initiated. 1,3-Benzodioxole (1905g, 15.6 moles) as then added through the dropping funnel over a five minute period. The temperature was then raised to 75°C and held for 22 hours (NMR indicated that the reaction was done after 9 hours.) The reaction was cooled to 26° and 25 oxalyl chloride (2290g, 18.1 moles) was added at a rate so as to maintain the temperature below 40°C (1.5 hours). The mixture was heated to 67°C for 5 hours followed by cooling to 16°C with an ice bath. The reaction was quenched with water (5 l) at a rate which kept the 30 temperature below 20°C. After the addition of water was complete, the mixture was stirred for 10 minutes. The layers were separated and the organic layer was washed again twice with water (5l). The organic layer was dried with magnesium sulfate (500g) and filtered to remove the 35 drying agent. The solvent was removed under vacuum at 50°C. The resulting warm liquid was allowed to cool at which time a solid began to form. After one hour, the

solid was washed with hexane (400 mL), filtered and dried to provide the desired sulfonyl chloride (2823g). The hexane wash was concentrated and the resulting solid washed with 400 mL hexane to provide additional sulfonyl 5 chloride (464g). The total yield was 3287g (95.5% based upon 1,3-benzodioxole).

Method 3:

10 1,4-benzodioxan-6-sulfonyl chloride was prepared according to the procedure disclosed in EP 583960, incorporated herein by reference.

EXAMPLE 29



15

Preparation of 1-[N-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl]-N-(2-methylpropyl)amino]-3(S)-[bis(phenylmethyl)amino]-4-phenyl-2(R)-butanol

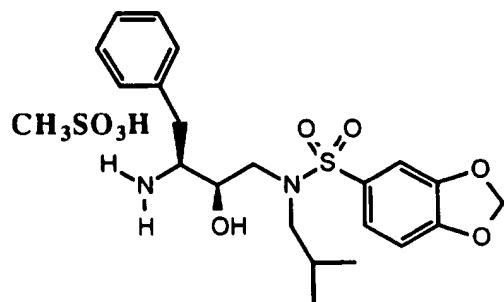
20

Method 1:

To a 5000 mL, 3-necked flask fitted with a mechanical stirrer was added N-[3(S)-[N,N-bis(phenylmethyl)amino]-2(R)-hydroxy-4-phenylbutyl]-N-isobutylamine•oxalic acid salt (354.7 g, 0.7 mole) and 1,4-dioxane (2000 mL). A solution of potassium carbonate (241.9 g, 1.75 moles) in water (250 mL) was then added. The resultant heterogeneous mixture was stirred for 2 hours at room temperature followed by the addition of 25 30 1,3-benzodioxole-5-sulfonyl chloride (162.2 g, 0.735 mole) dissolved in 1,4-dioxane (250 mL) over 15 minutes.

The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 18 hours. Ethyl acetate (1000 mL) and water (500 mL) were charged to the reactor and stirring continued for another 1 hour. The aqueous layer was separated and 5 further extracted with ethyl acetate (200 mL). The combined ethyl acetate layers were washed with 25% brine solution (500 mL) and dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate. After filtering and washing the magnesium sulfate with ethyl acetate (200 mL), the solvent in the 10 filtrate was removed under reduced pressure yielding the desired sulfonamide as a viscous yellow foamy oil (440.2g 105% yield). HPLC/MS (electrospray) (m/z 601 [M+H]⁺).

15

EXAMPLE 30

Preparation of 1-[N-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl]-N-(2-methylpropyl)amino]-3(S)-amino-4-phenyl-2(R)-butanol·methanesulfonic acid salt

Method 1:

Crude 1-[N-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl]-N-(2-methylpropyl)amino]-3(S)-[bis(phenylmethyl)amino]-4-phenyl-2(R)-butanol (6.2g, 0.010 moles) was dissolved in methanol (40 mL). Methanesulfonic acid (0.969g, 0.010 moles) and water (5 mL) were then added to the solution. The mixture was placed in a 500 mL Parr hydrogenation 30 bottle containing 20% Pd(OH)₂ on carbon (255 mg, 50% water content). The bottle was placed in the hydrogenator

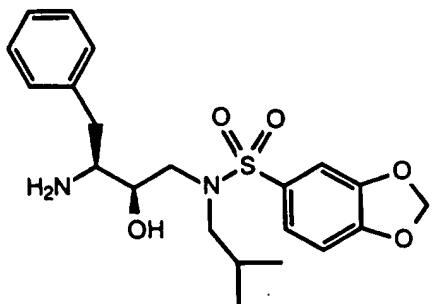
and purged 5 times with nitrogen and 5 times with hydrogen. The reaction was allowed to proceed at 35°C with 63 PSI hydrogen pressure for 18 hours. Additional catalyst (125 mg) was added and, after purging, the 5 hydrogenation continued for and additional 20 hours. The mixture was filtered through celite which was washed with methanol (2 X 10 mL). Approximately one third of the methanol was removed under reduced pressure. The remaining methanol was removed by azeotropic distillation 10 with toluene at 80 torr. Toluene was added in 15, 10, 10 and 10 mL portions. The product crystallized from the mixture and was filtered and washed twice with 10 mL portions of toluene. The solid was dried at room temperature at 1 torr for 6 hours to yield the amine salt 15 (4.5 g, 84%). HPLC/MS (electrospray) was consistent with the desired product (m/z 421 [$M+H]^+$).

Method 2:

Part A: N-[3(S)-[N,N-bis(phenylmethyl)amino]-2(R)-
20 hydroxy-4-phenylbutyl]-N-isobutylamine•oxalic acid salt
(2800g, 5.53 moles) and THF (4L) were added to a 22L
round bottom flask fitted with a mechanical stirrer.
Potassium carbonate (1921g, 13.9 moles) was dissolved in
water (2.8L) and added to the THF slurry. The mixture was
25 then stirred for one hour. 1,3-benzodioxole-5-sulfonyl
chloride (1281g, 5.8 moles) was dissolved in THF (1.4L)
and added to the reaction mixture over 25 minutes. An
additional 200 mL of THF was used to rinse the addition
funnel. The reaction was allowed to stir for 14 hours
30 and then water (4 L) was added. This mixture was stirred
for 30 minutes and the layers allowed to separate. The
layers was removed and the aqueous layer washed twice
with THF (500 mL). The combined THF layers were dried
with magnesium sulfate (500 g) for one hour. This
35 solution was then filtered to remove the drying agent and
used in subsequent reactions.

Part B: To the THF solution of crude 1-[N-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl]-N-(2-methylpropyl)amino]-3(S)-[bis(phenylmethyl)amino]-4-phenyl-2(R)-butanol was added water (500 mL) followed by methane sulfonic acid (531g, 5 5.5 moles). The solution was stirred to insure complete mixing and added to a 5 gallon autoclave. Pearlman's catalyst (200g of 20% Pd(OH)₂ on C/ 50% water) was added to the autoclave with the aid of THF (500 mL). The reactor was purged four times with nitrogen and four 10 times with hydrogen. The reactor was charged with 60 psig of hydrogen and stirring at 450 rpm started. After 16 hours, HPLC analysis indicated that a small amount of the mono-benzyl intermediate was still present. Additional catalyst (50g) was added and the reaction was 15 allowed to run overnight. The solution was then filtered through celite (500g) to remove the catalyst and concentrated under vacuum in five portions. To each portion, toluene (500 mL) was added and removed under vacuum to azeotropically removed residual water. The 20 resulting solid was divided into three portions and each washed with methyl t-butyl ether (2 L) and filtered. The residual solvent was removed at room temperature in a vacuum oven at less than 1 torr to yield the 2714g of the expected salt.

25 If desired, the product can be further purified by the following procedure. A total of 500 mL of methanol and 170g of material from above was heated to reflux until it all dissolved. The solution was cooled, 200 mL of isopropanol added and then 1000-1300 mL of hexane, 30 whereupon a white solid precipitated. After cooling to 0°C, this precipitate was collected and washed with hexane to afford 123g of the desired material. Through this procedure, the original material which was a 95:5 mixture of alcohol diastereomers was greater than 99:1 of 35 the desired diastereomer.

EXAMPLE 31

5 Preparation of 2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propylamine

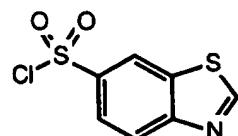
Part A: Preparation of 2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propylcarbamic acid phenylmethyl ester

To a solution of 3.19 g (8.6 mmol) of N-[3S-benzyloxy carbonylamino-2R-hydroxy-4-phenyl]-N-isobutylamine in 15 40mL of anhydrous methylene chloride, was added 0.87g of triethylamine. The solution was cooled to 0°C and 1.90g of (1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl chloride was added, stirred for 15 minutes at 0°C, then for 17 hours at room temperature. Ethyl acetate was added, washed with 5% 20 citric acid, saturated sodium bicarbonate, brine, dried and concentrated to yield crude material. This was recrystallized from diethyl ether/hexane to afford 4.77 g of pure 2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propylcarbamic acid 25 phenylmethyl ester.

Part B: Preparation of 2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propylamine

A solution of 4.11 g of carbamic acid, 2R-hydroxy-3-[[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl-, phenylmethyl ester in 45 mL of tetrahydrofuran and 25 mL of methanol was hydrogenated over 1.1 g of 10% palladium-on-carbon under 50 psig of hydrogen for 16 hours. The catalyst was removed by filtration and the filtrate concentrated to afford 1.82g of the desired 2R-hydroxy-3-[[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propylamine.

EXAMPLE 32



15

Preparation of Benzothiazole-6-sulfonyl Chloride

Part A: Preparation of N-(4-Sulfonamidophenyl)thiourea

20 A mixture of sulfanilamide (86 g, 0.5 mole), ammonium thiocyanate (76.0 g, 0.5 mole) and dilute hydrochloric acid (1.5 N, 1 L) was mechanically stirred and heated at reflux for 2 hr. About 200 mL of water was distilled off and concentration of the reaction mixture afforded a solid. The solid was filtered and was washed with cold water and air dried to afford 67.5 g (59%) of the desired product as a white powder.

30 Part B: Preparation of 2-Amino-6-sulfonamidobenzothiazole

Bromine (43.20 g, 0.27 mol) in chloroform (200 mL) was added over 1 hr. to a suspension of N-(4-sulfonamidophenyl)-thiourea (27.72, 0.120 mol) in chloroform (800 mL). After the addition, the reaction mixture was heated at reflux for 4.5 hr. The chloroform

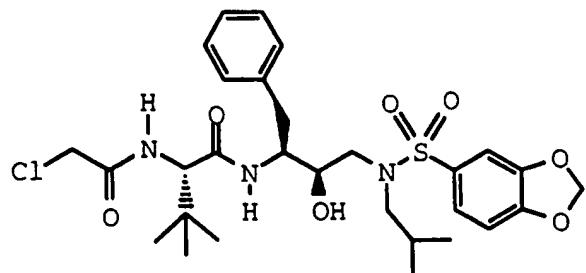
was removed in vacuo and the residue was repeatedly distilled with additional amounts of chloroform. The solid obtained was treated with water (600 mL) followed by ammonium hydroxide (to make it basic), then was heated at reflux for 1 hr. The cooled reaction mixture was filtered, washed with water and air dried to afford 22.0 g (80%) of the desired product as a white powder.

Part C: Preparation of Benzothiazole-6-sulfonic acid

A suspension of 2-amino-6-sulfonamido-benzothiazole (10.0 g, 43.67 mmol) in dioxane (300 mL) was heated at reflux. Isoamyl nitrite (24 mL) was added in two portions to the reaction mixture. Vigorous evolution of gas was observed (the reaction was conducted behind a shield as a precaution) and after 2 hr., a red precipitate was deposited in the reaction vessel. The reaction mixture was filtered hot, and the solid was washed with dioxane and was dried. The solid was recrystallized from methanol-water. A small amount of a precipitate was formed after 2 days. The precipitate was filtered off and the mother liquor was concentrated in vacuo to afford a pale red-orange solid (8.0 g, 85%) of pure product.

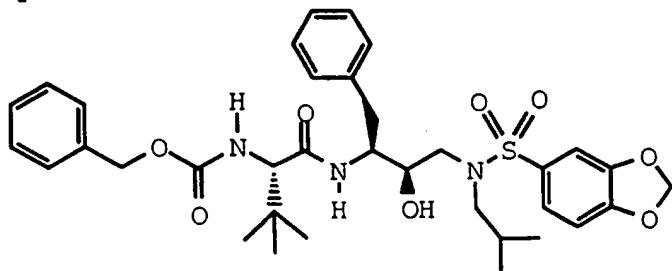
Part D: Preparation of 6-Chlorosulfonylbenzothiazole

Thionyl chloride (4 mL) was added to a suspension of the benzothiazole-6-sulfonic acid (0.60 g, 2.79 mmol) in dichloroethane (15 mL) and the reaction mixture was heated at reflux and dimethylformamide (5 mL) was added to the reaction mixture to yield a clear solution. After 1.5 hr. at reflux, the solvent was removed in vacuo and excess HCl and thionyl chloride was chased by evaporation with dichloroethane.

EXAMPLE 33

Preparation of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl-2S-[(chloroacetyl)amino]-3,3-dimethylbutanamide

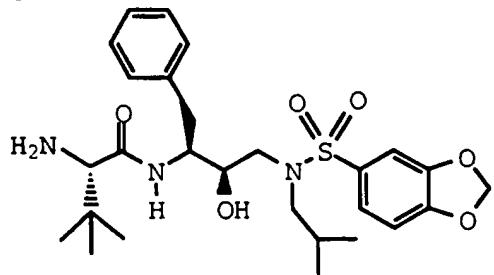
Part A: Preparation of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl-2S-[(phenylmethoxycarbonyl)amino]-3,3-dimethylbutanamide



To a solution of 118.8 g (0.776 mol) of N-
15 hydroxybenzotriazole and 137.1 g (0.52 mol) of N-
carbobenzylloxycarbonyl-L-tert-leucine in 750 mL of
anhydrous DMF at 0°C under a nitrogen atmosphere, was
added 109.1 g (0.57 mol) of EDC. After stirring at 0°C
for 2 hours, a solution of 273 g (0.53 mol) of 2R-
20 hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-
methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propylamine
methanesulfonate, previously neutralized with 228 mL
(210g, 2.08 mol) of 4-methylmorpholine, in 250 mL of
anhydrous DMF was added. After stirring at 0°C for 30
25 minutes, the mixture stirred at room temperature for 18
hours. The solvents were removed under reduced pressure

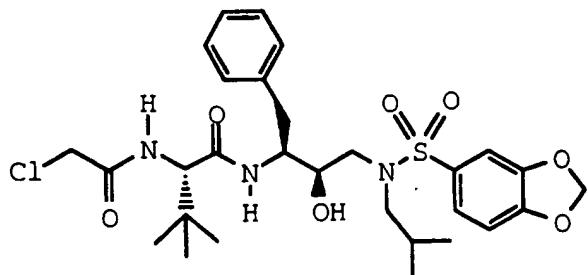
at 45°C, 1.5 L of ethyl acetate added, washed with 5% citric acid, saturated sodium bicarbonate, brine, dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated to afford 400g of crude material. This was 5 chromatographed in 3 batches on a Prep 2000 Chromatogram on silica gel using 20%-50% ethyl acetate/hexane as eluent to yield 320g of purified material, m/e=674 (M+Li), 98% by HPLC.

- 10 Part B: Preparation of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl) propyl]-2S-amino-3,3-dimethylbutanamide



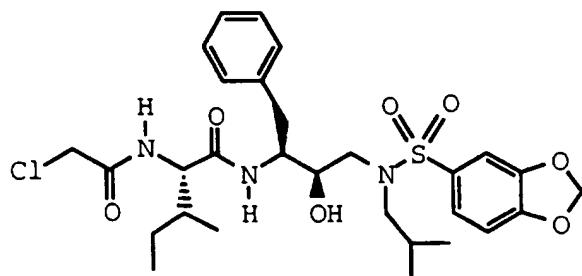
- 15 A solution of 312g of the Cbz compound from above in 1L of tetrahydrofuran was hydrogenated in the presence of 100g of 4% palladium-on-carbon catalyst under 60 psig of hydrogen for 6 hours at room temperature. The catalyst was removed by filtration and the solvents removed under 20 reduced pressure to afford 240g of the desired compound.

- Part C: Preparation of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl) propyl]-2S-[(chloroacetyl)amino]-3,3-dimethylbutanamide
25



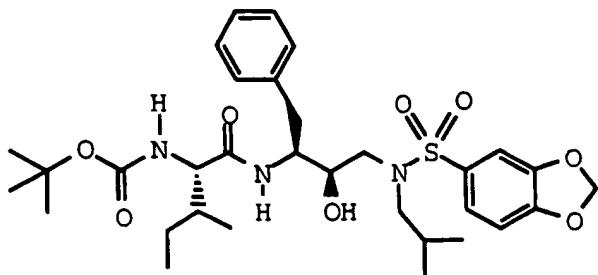
To a solution of 234.3 g (0.439 mol) of the amine from above in 1L of methylene chloride, was added 80 mL (59.5 g, 0.46 mol) of diisopropylethylamine, followed by the 5 slow addition at room temperature of 78.8 g (0.46 mol) of chloroacetic anhydride while maintaining the temperature below 35°C. After stirring for an additional 1 hour, analysis by HPLC indicated a small amount of starting material was still present, and 1.5 g of chloroacetic 10 anhydride was added. After 10 minutes, the solvents were removed under reduced pressure, 1 L ethyl acetate added, washed with 5% citric acid, saturated sodium bicarbonate, brine, dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated to yield 314 g of crude material. This 15 was chromatographed in 3 portions on a Prep 2000 Chromatogram on silica gel using 20-50% ethyl acetate/hexane to afford 165 g of the desired compound, m/e=616 (M+Li), 98% by HPLC.

20

EXAMPLE 34

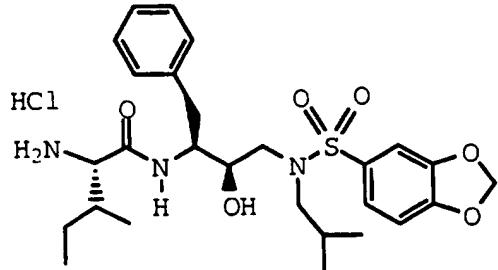
Preparation of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)aminol-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-[(chloroacetyl)aminol-3S-methylpentanamide

Part A: Preparation of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)aminol-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-[(1,1-dimethylethoxy carbonyl)aminol-3S-methylpentanamide



To a cooled solution of N-t-Boc-L-isoleucine 2.02g (8.74 mmol) and 2.00g (13.11 mmol) of N-hydroxybenzotriazole in 5 17 mL of N,N-dimethylformamide was added 1.84g (9.61 mmol) of EDC and stirred at 0°C for one hour. To this was added a solution of 3.67g (8.74 mmol) of 2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl amine in 6 mL of N,N-dimethylformamide and the solution stirred for 16 hours. 10 The solvent was removed in vacuo, replaced with ethyl acetate, and washed with saturated sodium bicarbonate, 5% citric acid and brine. The organic layers were dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated to 15 yield 6.1 grams of crude product, which was chromatographed on silica gel using 1:1 ethyl acetate:hexane eluant to produce 4.3 g (78% yield) of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-[(1,1-dimethylethoxy)carbonyl]amino]-3S-methylpentanamide. 20

Part B: Preparation of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-amino-3S-methylpentanamide•hydrochloride salt



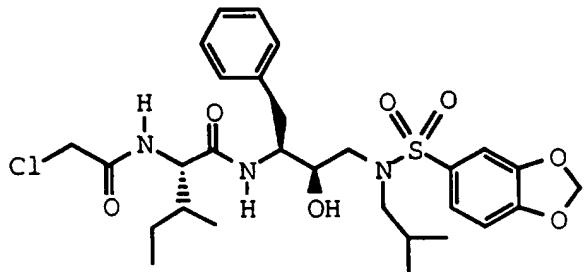
100

N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-[(1,1-dimethylethoxy)carbonyl]amino]-3S-methylpentanamide

5 (4.29g, 6.77 mmol) was dissolved in 20 mL of 4N HCl in dioxane and stirred for 20 minutes. The precipitated product was stripped two times from diethyl ether and the crude hydrochloride salt was used in subsequent reactions.

10

Part C: Preparation of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-[(chloroacetyl)amino]-3S-methylpentanamide



15

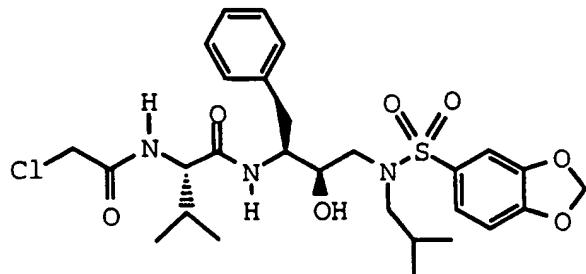
N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-amino-3S-methylpentanamide·hydrochloride salt (3.62g, 6.77 mmol)

20 was dissolved in 45 mL of methylene chloride and to this was added 1.3g (10.15 mmol) of N,N-diisopropylethyl amine to neutralize the salt, and another 0.923 g (7.10 mmol) of diisopropylethyl amine followed by 1.22g (7.11 mmol) of chloroacetic anhydride. The solution was stirred at
25 room temperature for 30 minutes. The contents were concentrated on a rotory evaporator and the residue was partitioned between ethyl acetate and water. The organic layer was washed with 5% citric acid and then saturated sodium bicarbonate and brine. The organic layers were
30 dried over magnesium sulfate filtered and concentrated to yield 4.12 g of crude product. Recrystallization from ethyl acetate hexane yielded 3.5 g (85% yield) of N-[2R-

101

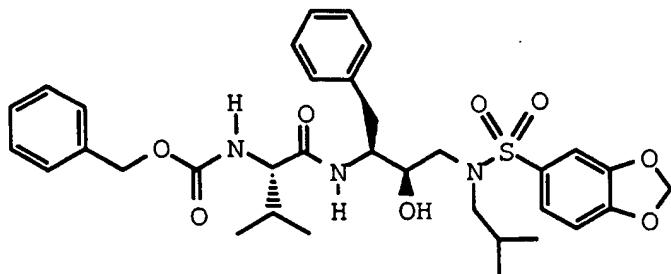
hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-[(chloroacetyl)amino]-3S-methylpentanamide, as a white solid; mass spectrum m/z=616 (M+Li).

5

EXAMPLE 35

Preparation of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-[(chloroacetyl)amino]-3S-methylbutaneamide

Part A : Preparation of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-[(phenylmethoxycarbonyl)amino]-3S-methylbutaneamide



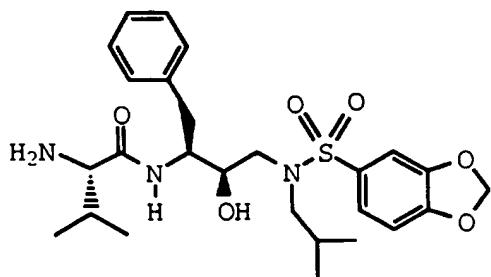
A 250 mL round bottom flask equipped with magnetic stir bar was charged with N-Cbz-L-Valine (4.22 g, 16.8 mmol) in 20 mL DMF. The solution was cooled to 0°C and charged with HOBt (2.96, 21.9 mmol) and EDC (3.22 g, 16.8 mmol) and stirred 1 hour. The reaction was then charged with N-methylmorpholine (1.7 g, 16.8 mmol), 2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-

102

1S-(phenylmethyl)propylamine (7.55 g, 14.6 mmol) in 30 mL of DMF. The reaction was stirred overnight at room temperature then concentrated in vacuo and partitioned between ethyl acetate and 5% Citric acid. The combined organic layers were washed with saturated sodium bicarbonate and brine, and dried over sodium sulfate. Concentration in vacuo yielded 10 g crude product. Purification by Prep HPLC (20-40% ethyl acetate/hexane) yielded 5.8 g (61 %) of the desired compound.

10

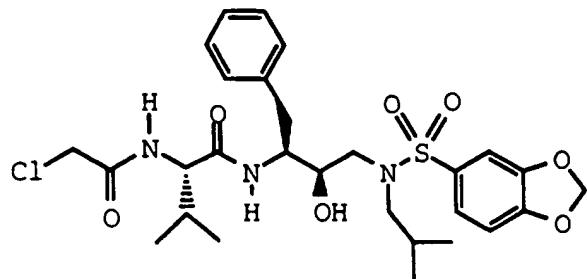
Part B : Preparation of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-amino-3-methylbutaneamide



15

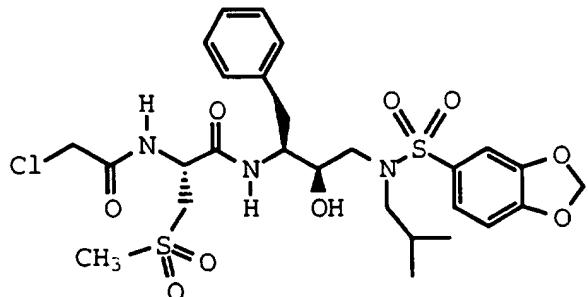
A 300 mL Fisher-Porter vessel equipped with magnetic stir bar was charged with N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-[(phenylmethoxycarbonyl)amino]-3-methylbutaneamide (5.8 g), 2.3 g of 10% Pd-C in 75 mL tetrahydrofuran. The reaction was charged with 50 psi H₂ and hydrogenated overnight. The reaction mixture was filtered thru Celite and concentrated in vacuo to yield 4.4 g of white foam that was used in subsequent reactions without further purification.

Part C : Preparation of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-[(chloroacetyl)amino]-3-methylbutaneamide



A 250 mL round bottom flask equipped with magnetic stir bar was charged with crude N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl-2S-amino-3-methylbutaneamide (4.35 g) in 60 mL CH₂Cl₂. The reaction was charged with 1.19 g diisopropylamine followed by 1.5 g of chloroacetic anhydride and stirred until TLC indicated no remaining starting material (about 1.5 hours). The reaction was concentrated in vacuo and partitioned between ethyl acetate and saturated sodium bicarbonate. The combined organic layers were washed with brine, and dried over sodium sulfate. Concentration in vacuo yielded 5.17 g of desired product that was used in subsequent reactions without further purification.

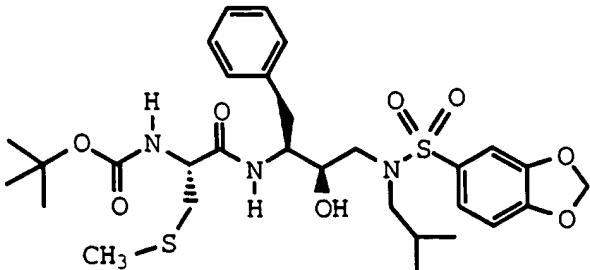
EXAMPLE 36



20

Preparation of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl-2S-[chloroacetyl]amino-3-(methylsulfonyl)propaneamide

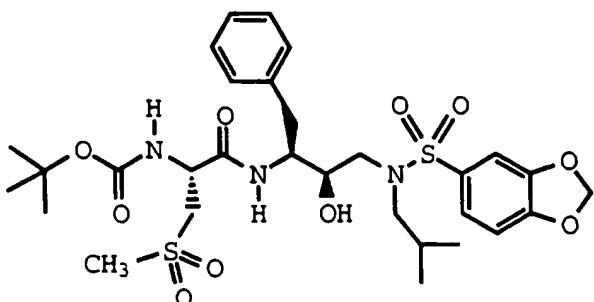
Part A: Preparation of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-[(1,1-dimethylethoxy)carbonylamino]-3-(methylthio)propaneamide



5

N-t-Boc-S-methyl-(L)-cysteine (2.80 g, 11.9 mmol), 1-Hydroxybenzotriazole hydrate (1.92 g, 12.5 mmol), and 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (2.27 g, 11.9 mmol) were mixed in N,N-dimethylformamide (30.0 mL) at 0°C for 10 min. N-Methylmorpholine (3.03 g, 33.0 mmol) was added and the solution stirred an additional 10 min at 0°C. 2R-Hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propylamine (5.00 g, 11.9 mmol) was added and the solution was warmed to room temperature and stirred for 2 hours. The reaction mixture was poured into ethyl acetate (500 mL) and washed with 10% aqueous hydrochloric acid (3 X 100 mL), saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate (3 X 100 mL) and brine (2 X 100 mL). The organic layer was dried over sodium sulfate and percolated through a bed of silica gel (50 g). The desired product (7.13 g, 11.19 mmol, 93% yield) was obtained as a white solid by removal of the solvent at reduced pressure; m/e calcd 637; found (M + Li) 644.

Part B: Preparation of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-[(1,1-dimethylethoxy)carbonylamino]-3-(methylsulfonyl)propaneamide



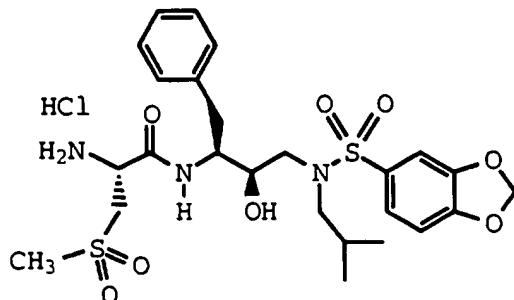
N-[{2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl) propyl]-2S-[(1,1-dimethylethoxy) carbonyl]amino]-3-(methylthio)propaneamide (7.10 g, 11.1 mmol) was dissolved in methanol (150 mL). A solution of oxone® (20.8 g, 33.9 mmol) in water (150 mL) was added dropwise to the solution at room temperature over 1.5 hours. The solution became cloudy and a precipitate formed during the addition. The reaction was stirred for an additional 1 hour and tetrahydrofuran (200 mL) was added. After an additional 1 hour of mixing the solution was poured into ethyl acetate (1000 mL) and washed with water (3 x 200 mL) followed by brine (2 x 300 mL). The organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate and solvent removed at reduced pressure. The desired product (5.75 g, 8.86 mmol, 79% yield) was obtained as an off white solid; m/e calcd 669; found (M+H) 670.

20

Part C: Preparation of N-[{2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-amino-3-(methylsulfonyl)propaneamide•hydrochloride salt

25

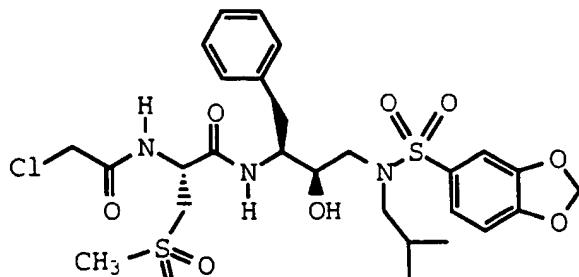
106



N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-[(1,1-dimethylethoxy)carbonyl]amino]-3-(methylsulfonyl)propaneamide (5.5 g, 8.20 mmol) was dissolved in dichloromethane (100 mL) at room temperature. Anhydrous hydrochloric acid was bubbled through the solution for 15 min. The solution was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours and the solvent was removed at reduced pressure. The desired product (4.91 g, 8.10 mmol, 99 % yield) was obtained as a white solid; m/e calcd 569; found (M+Li) 576.

Part D: Preparation of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-[(chloroacetyl)amino]-3-(methylsulfonyl)propaneamide

20

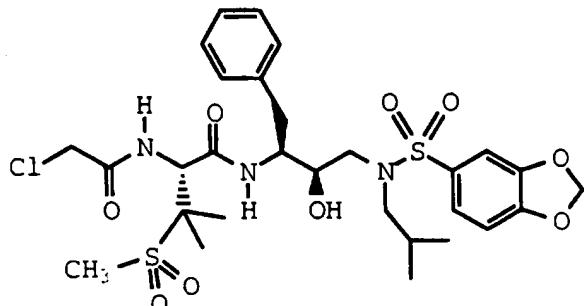


N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-amino-3-(methylsulfonyl)propaneamide·hydrochloride salt (4.00 g,

25 6.59 mmole) was mixed at room temperature in acetonitrile

107

(40 mL). Triethylamine (2.10 g, 21.0 mmol) and chloroacetic anhydride (1.12 g, 6.59 mmol) were added. The solution was stirred at room temperature for 16 hours and poured into ethyl acetate (250 mL). The solution was 5 washed with 10% aqueous acetic acid (2 x 100 mL), saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate (2 x 100 mL), and brine (2 x 100 mL). The organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate and solvent removed at reduced pressure. The product (1.20 g, 1.85 mmol, 28% yield) was 10 obtained as a white solid by crystallization from ethyl acetate and hexanes; m/e calcd 645; found (M+Li) 652.

EXAMPLE 37

15

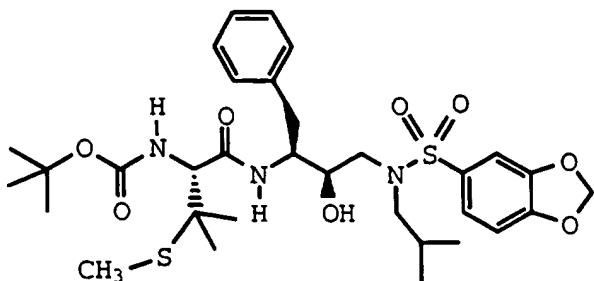
Preparation of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl-2S-[(chloroacetyl)amino]-3-methyl-3-(methylsulfonyl)butaneamide

20

Part A: Preparation of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl-2S-[(1,1-dimethylethoxy)carbonyl]amino]-3-methyl-3-(methylthio)butaneamide

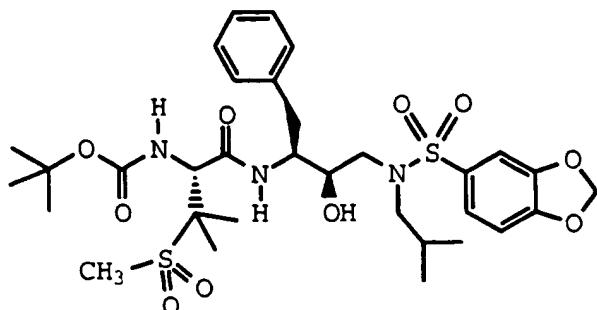
25

108



The N-t-boc-S-methyl-L-penicillamine dicyclohexylamine salt (4.00g, 9.00 mmol), 1-Hydroxybenzotriazole hydrate (1.69 g, 11.00 mmol), and 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (1.71 g, 9.00 mmol) were mixed in dimethylformamide (60.0 mL) at room temperature. The heterogeneous mixture was stirred for 1 hour and 2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propylamine (3.78 g, 9.00 mmol) was added and the heterogenous mixture was stirred for 16 hours. The solution was poured into ethyl acetate (600 mL) and washed with 10% aqueous acetic acid (2 x 300 mL), saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate (2 x 300 mL) and brine (300 mL). The solution was dried over sodium sulfate and the solvent was removed in vacuo. The desired product was purified by flash chromatography (0-80% ethyl acetate/hexanes on silica gel). The product (5.21 g, 7.83 mmol, 87% yield) was obtained as a white foam; m/e calcd 665; found (M+Li) 672.

Part B: Preparation of N-[(2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-[(1,1-dimethylethoxy)carbonyl]amino]-3-methyl-3-(methylsulfonyl)butaneamide



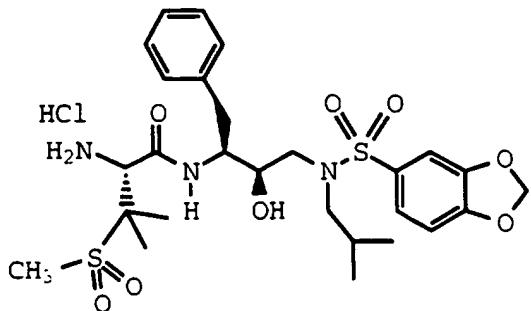
N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-[(1,1-dimethylethoxy)carbonyl] amino]-3-methyl-3-(methylthio)butaneamide (5.01 g, 7.53 mmol) was dissolved in tetrahydrofuran (250 mL). A solution of oxone® (13.8 g, 22.6 mmol) in water (250 mL) was added dropwise to the solution at room temperature over 2 hours. The solution became cloudy and a precipitate formed during the addition. The solution was poured into ethyl acetate (500 mL) and washed with water (3 x 200 mL) followed by brine (2 x 300 mL). The organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate and solvent removed in vacuo.

10 The product (4.72 g, 6.77 mmol, 89% yield) was obtained as a white foam; m/e calcd 697; found (M+Li) 704.

15

Part C: Preparation of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-amino-3-methyl-3-(methylsulfonyl)butaneamide•hydrochloride salt

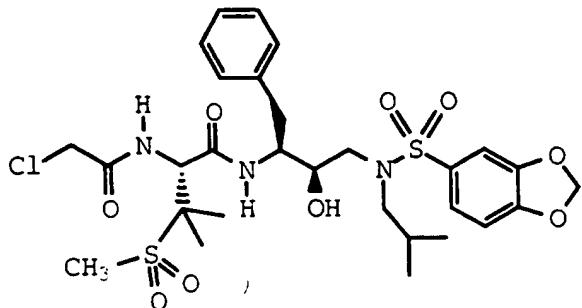
20



110

N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-[(1,1-dimethylethoxy)carbonyl] amino]-3-methyl-3-(methylsulfonyl)butaneamide (4.51 g, 6.46 mmol) was dissolved in dichloromethane (200 mL) at room temperature. Anhydrous hydrochloric acid was bubbled through the solution for 30 min. The solution was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour and the solvent was removed in vacuo. The product (4.02 g, 6.35 mmol, 99% yield) was obtained as a white solid; m/e calcd 697; found (M+Li) 704.

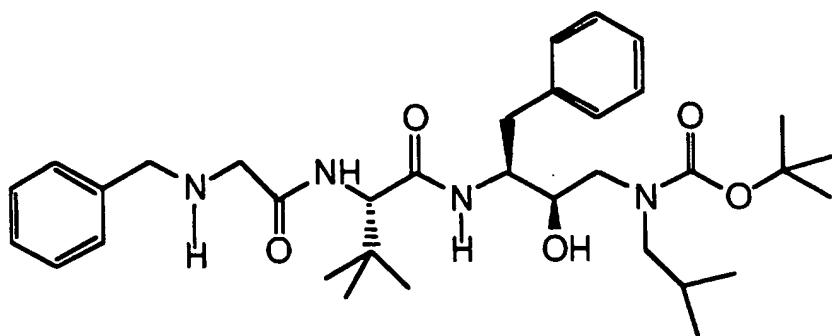
Part D: Preparation of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-[(chloroacetyl)amino]-3-methyl-3-(methylsulfonyl)butaneamide



N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-amino-3-methyl-3-(methylsulfonyl)butaneamide•hydrochloride salt (3.90 g, 6.15 mmole) was mixed at room temperature in acetonitrile (40 mL). Triethylamine (1.86 g, 18.45 mmol) and chloroacetic anhydride (1.05 g, 6.15 mmol) were added. The solution was stirred at room temperature for 16 hours and poured into ethyl acetate (250 mL). The solution was washed with 10% aqueous acetic acid (2 x 100 mL), saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate (2 x 100 mL), and brine (2 x 100 mL). The organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate and solvent was removed in

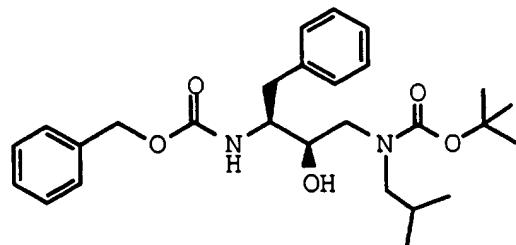
vacuo. A yellow oil (4.3 g) was obtained and purified by flash chromatography (silica gel, 50-75% ethyl acetates in hexanes. The product (2.15 g, 3.18 mmol, 52% Yield) was obtained as a white foam; m/e calcd 674; found (M+Li) 5 681.

EXAMPLE 38



10 Preparation of 2S-[[N-(phenylmethyl)aminoacyllaminol-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,1-dimethylethoxy)carbonyl](2-methylpropyl)aminol-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3.3-dimethylbutanamide

15 Part A: Preparation of N-[(1,1-dimethylethoxy)carbonyl]-N-[2-methylpropyl]-3S-[N¹-(phenylmethoxycarbonyl)amino]-2R-hydroxy-4-phenylbutylamine

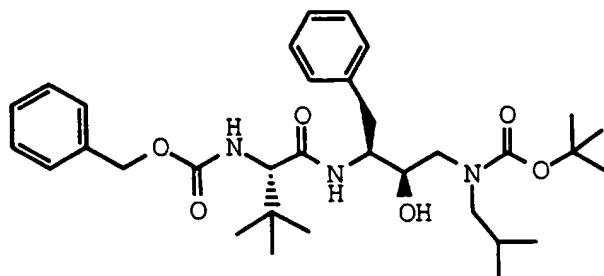


A solution of N-[3S-[N¹-(benzyloxycarbonyl)amino]-2R-hydroxy-4-phenylbutyl]-N-(2-methylpropyl)amine (18.5 g, 50 mmol), BOC-ON (12.35 g, 50 mmol) and triethylamine (7 mL) in tetrahydrofuran (400 mL) was stirred at room 25 temperature for 18 hours and then concentrated in vacuo. The residue was dissolved in dichloromethane (1 L) and

112

washed with sodium hydroxide (5 %, 2 x 200 mL) and brine, dried ($MgSO_4$) and then concentrated in vacuo to afford 23.5 g (quantitative yield) of the pure desired product.

- 5 Part B: Preparation of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,1-dimethylethoxy) carbonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-[(phenylmethoxycarbonyl)amino]-3,3-dimethylbutanamide

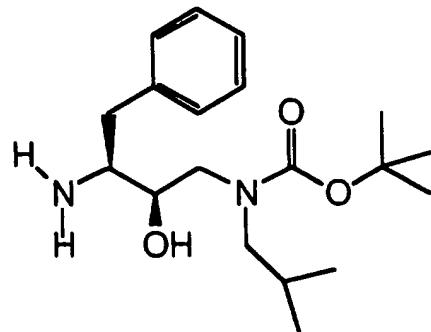


10

N-[(1,1-dimethylethoxy) carbonyl]-N-[2-methylpropyl]-3S-[N¹-(phenylmethoxycarbonyl)amino]-2R-hydroxy-4-phenylbutylamine in ethanol was hydrogenated at 45 psig of hydrogen in the presence of 5% pd(C) catalyst to yield N-[(1,1-dimethylethoxy) carbonyl]-N-[2-methylpropyl]-3S-[N¹-(phenylmethoxycarbonyl)amino]-2R-hydroxy-4-phenylbutylamine to N-[(1,1-dimethylethoxy) carbonyl]-N-[2-methylpropyl]-3S-amino-2R-hydroxy-4-phenylbutylamine

15

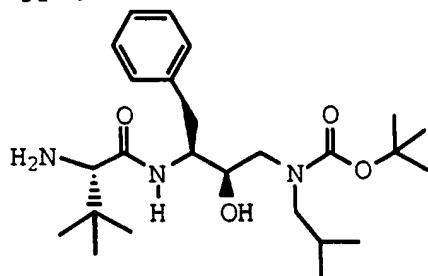
20



Following standard workup, the crude amine (12.24 g, 36.42 mmol) was added to a mixture of N-25 carbobenzoyloxycarbonyl-L-tert-leucine (9.67 g, 36.42

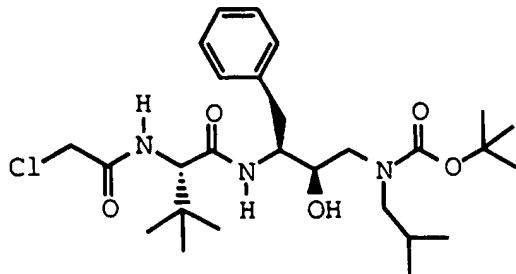
mmol), HOBT (4.92 g, 36.42 mmol) and EDC (6.98 g, 36.42 mmol) in DMF (300 mL) after the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. The mixture was stirring for an additional 18 hours. The DMF was removed in 5 vacuo, the residue was dissolved in dichloromethane (500 mL), washed with sodium hydroxide (5%, 2 X 200 mL) and brine (200 mL), dried and concentrated to afford 21 g (quantitative) of the desired product.

- 10 Part C: Preparation of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,1-dimethylethoxy) carbonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-amino-3,3-dimethylbutanamide



- 15 N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,1-dimethylethoxy) carbonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-[(phenylmethoxycarbonyl)amino]-3,3-dimethylbutanamide (20 g, 34.29 mmol) in methanol (250 mL) was hydrogenated at room temperature in the presence of Pd/C (10%, 5 g). The 20 catalyst was filtered off and the filtrate was concentrated to afford 13.8 g (90%) of the pure desired product.

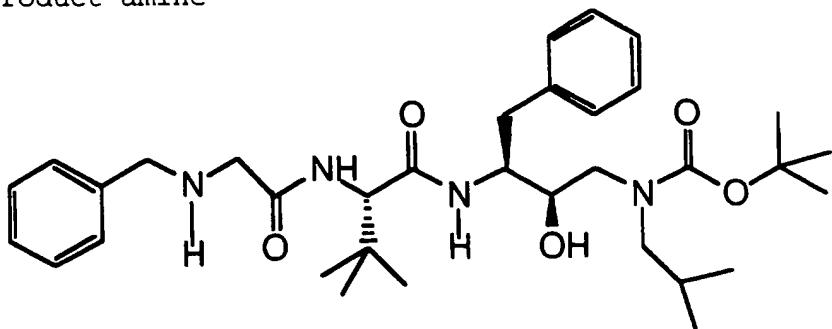
- Part D: Preparation of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,1-dimethylethoxy)carbonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-[(chloroacetyl)amino]-3,3-dimethylbutanamide
25



To N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,1-dimethylethoxy) carbonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-amino-
5 3,3-dimethylbutanamide (12.45 g, 27.70 mmol) in dichloromethane (200 mL) was added chloroacetic anhydride (5.21 g, 30.48 mmol) and the reaction mixture was stirred for 18 hours. The reaction mixture was washed with citric acid (5%, 100 mL), sodium bicarbonate (saturated, 10 100 mL) and brine, dried (MgSO_4) and concentrated to afford 12.0 g (82%) of the pure desired product.

Part E: Preparation of 2S-[[N-(phenylmethyl)aminoacyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,1-dimethylethoxy)carbonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethylbutanamide

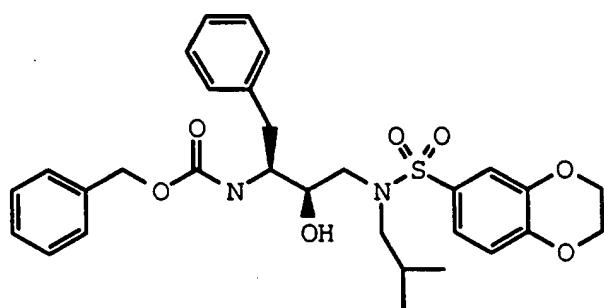
The product from Part D is added to benzyl amine in tetrahydrofuran with stirring at about room temperature.
20 The solvent is removed under reduced pressure using a rotary evaporator and the residue is washed with dilute HCl, saturated NaHCO_3 , water, brine and dried to provide the product amine



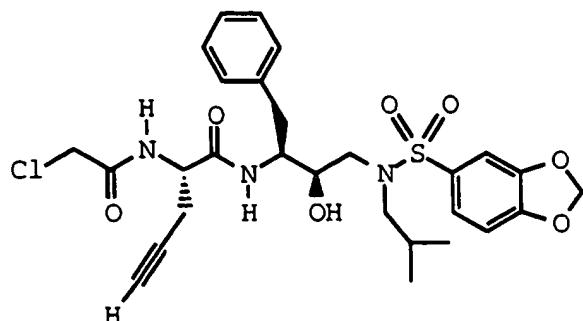
25 The material can be chromatographed if desired.

EXAMPLE 39

- Preparation of 2R-hydroxy-3-[[(1,4-benzodioxan-6-yl) sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)aminol]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl carbamic acid phenylmethyl ester

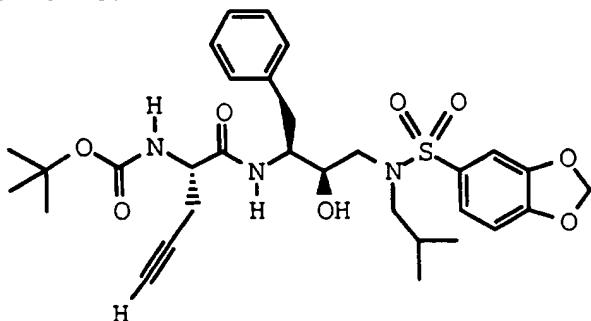


- 10 To a solution of the N-[3S-[(phenylmethoxycarbonyl) amino]-2R-hydroxy-4-phenylbutyl]-N-(2-methylpropyl)amine (0.5 g, 1.35 mmol) in CH₂Cl₂ (5.0 mL) containing Et₃N (0.35 mL, 2.5 mmol) was added 1,4-benzodioxan-6-sulfonyl chloride (0.34 g, 1.45 mmol) and stirred at 0°C for 30 min. After stirring at room temperature for 1 hour, the reaction mixture was diluted with CH₂Cl₂ (20 mL), washed with cold 1N HCl (3 x 20 mL), water (2 x 20 mL), satd. NaHCO₃ (2 x 20 mL) and water (3 x 20 mL), dried (Na₂SO₄) and concentrated under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was purified by flash chromatography using 35% EtOAc in hexane to give the desired product as a white amorphous solid which crystallized from MeOH as a white powder (0.65g. 84% yield): m. p. 82-84° C, HRMS-FAB : calcd for C₃₀H₃₇N₂O₇S 569.2321 (MH⁺), found 569.2323.

EXAMPLE 40

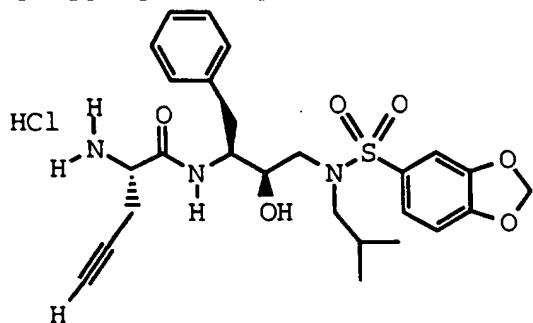
5 Preparation of 2S-[(chloroacetyl)aminol-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
10 [(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)aminol-
1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]pent-4-ynamide

Part A . Preparation of 2S-[[[(1,1-dimethylethoxy)carbonyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]pent-4-ynamide



To a cooled solution of N-t-Boc-L-propargyl glycine (5.0 g, 23.4 mmol) and 4.7g (1.5 equiv.) of N-hydroxybenzotriazole in 40 mL of N,N-dimethylformamide was added 4.6g (23.4 mmol) of EDC and stirred at 0 C for one hour. To this was added a solution of 12.10g (23.4 mmol) of 2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propylamine in 6 mL of N,N-dimethylformamide and the solution stirred for 16 hours. The solvent was removed by rotatory evaporation, replaced with ethyl acetate, and washed with saturated sodium

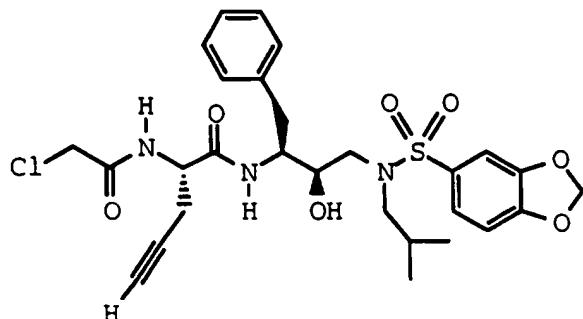
- bicarbonate, 5% citric acid and brine. The organics were dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated to yield 13.3 grams of crude product, which was crystallized from diethyl ether: ethyl acetate to yield
- 5 6.9g of 2S-[(1,1-dimethylethoxy)carbonyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propylpent-4-ynamide.
- 10 Part B. Preparation of 2S-amino-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propylpent-4-ynamide



- 15 5.0g (8.12 mmol) of the product from Part A. was dissolved in 20 mL of 4N HCl in dioxane and stirred for 30 minutes. The precipitated product was stripped two times from diethyl ether and this crude hydrochloride salt was used in Part C.

20

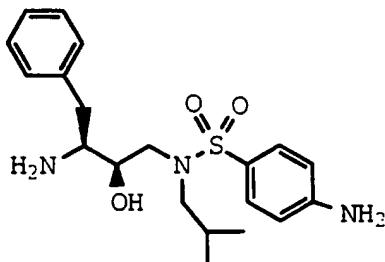
Part C. Preparation of 2S-[(chloroacetyl)amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propylpent-4-ynamide



4.4g (8.12 mmol) of amine hydrochloride from Part B was dissolved in 60 mL of methylene chloride and to this was 5 added 3.0g (24 mmol) of N,N-diisopropylethyl amine, followed by 1.38g (8.1 mmol) of chloroacetic anhydride. The solution was stirred at room temperature overnight. The contents were concentrated on a rotory evaporator and the residue was partitioned between ethyl acetate and 10 water. The organic layer was washed with 5% citric acid and then saturated sodium bicarbonate and brine. The organics were dried over magnesium sulfate filtered and concentrated to yield 4.3g of crude product. Recrystallization from ethyl acetate hexane yielded 3.6 g 15 (75% yield) of 2S-[(chloroacetyl)amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propylpent-4-ynamide as a white solid.

EXAMPLE 41

20



Preparation of 2R-hydroxy-3-[(4-aminophenyl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)aminol-1S-(phenylmethyl)propylamine

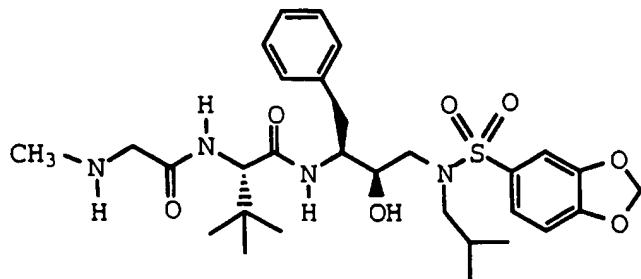
Part A: Preparation of 2R-hydroxy-3-[(4-nitrophenyl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propylcarbamic acid phenylmethyl ester

- 5 To a solution of 4.0 g (10.8 mmol) of N-[3S-benzyloxy carbonylamino-2R-hydroxy-4-phenyl]-N-isobutylamine in 50mL of anhydrous methylene chloride, was added 4.5mL (3.27g, 32.4 mmol) of triethylamine. The solution was cooled to 0°C and 2.63g (11.9 mmol) of 4-nitrobenzene
10 sulfonyl chloride was added, stirred for 30 minutes at 0°C, then for 1 hour at room temperature. Ethyl acetate was added, washed with 5% citric acid, saturated sodium bicarbonate, brine, dried and concentrated to yield 5.9 g of crude material. This was recrystallized from ethyl
15 acetate/hexane to afford 4.7 g of pure [2R-hydroxy-3-[(4-nitrophenyl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl) amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propylcarbamic acid phenylmethyl ester, m/e=556 (M+H).

20 Part B: Preparation of 2R-hydroxy-3-[(4-aminophenyl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propylamine

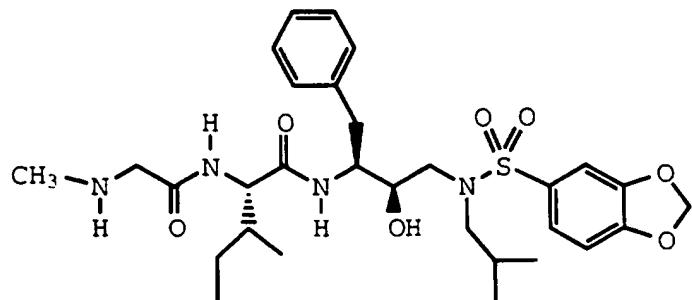
A solution of 3.0g (5.4 mmol) of 2R-hydroxy-3-[(4-nitrophenyl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl) amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propylcarbamic acid phenylmethyl ester in
25 20 mL of ethyl acetate was hydrogenated over 1.5 g of 10% palladium-on-carbon catalyst under 35 psig of hydrogen for 3.5 hours. The catalyst was removed by filtration
30 and the solution concentrated to afford 2.05 g of the desired 2R-hydroxy-3-[(4-aminophenyl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propylamine, m/e=392 (M+H).

120

EXAMPLE 42

Preparation of 2S-[[(N-methylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl-3,3-dimethylbutanamide

To 6.55 g (10.7 mmol) of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl-2S-[(chloroacetyl)amino]-3,3-dimethylbutanamide was added 25 mL of tetrahydrofuran, the solvent removed under reduced pressure to remove any ethyl acetate, and then 25 mL of tetrahydrofuran was added. To this solution at 10°C was added 19 mL (214 mmol) of 40% aqueous methylamine. After 2 hours, the solvents were removed under reduced pressure, added 1 L ethyl acetate, washed with saturated sodium bicarbonate, brine, dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated to afford 6.0 g of crude material, which was assayed by HPLC to be 98% purity.

EXAMPLE 43

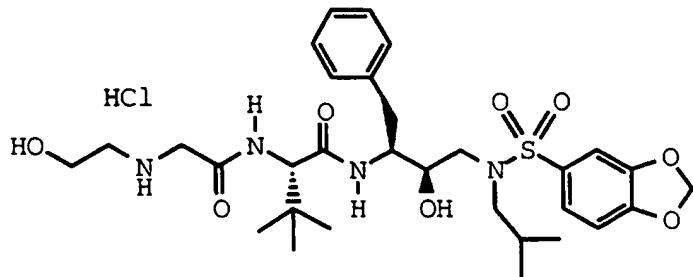
Preparation of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)aminol-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-[(N-methylamino)acetyl]aminol-3S-methylpentanamide

5

To 3.47 g (5.7 mmol) of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)aminol-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-[(chloroacetyl)amino]-3S-methylpentanamide was added 50 mL of tetrahydrofuran. To 10 this solution was added 12 mL (135 mmol) of 40% aqueous methylamine. After 6 hours, the solvents were removed under reduced pressure, added ethyl acetate, washed with saturated sodium bicarbonate, brine, dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated to afford 15 3.5 g of crude material, which was assayed by HPLC to be 96% purity. The product was chromatographically purified on basic alumina using methanol and ethyl acetate eluants to yield 2.88g (85%) pure desired product (100% by HPLC); m/e C₃₀H₄₄N₄O₇S calcd 604.77; found (M+Li) 611.

20

EXAMPLE 44

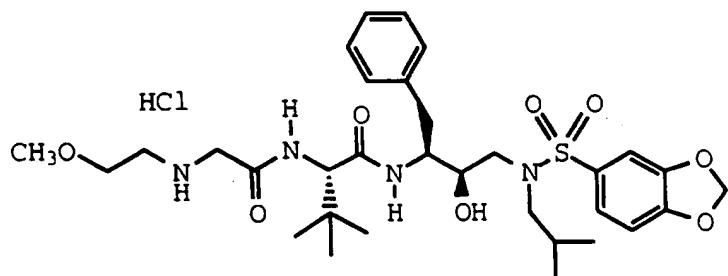


Preparation of 2S-[(N-(2-hydroxyethyl)aminoacetyl)aminol-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)aminol-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethylbutanamide•hydrochloride

A solution of 2.0 g 2S-[(chloroacetyl)amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)aminol-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethylbutanamide and 4.0 g 2-hydroxyethyl amine (20

eq.) in 8 mL tetrahydrofuran was stirred 6 hours at room temperature. The reaction was concentrated in vacuo and partitioned between ethyl acetate and saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate. The combined organics were washed 5 with brine, dried, and concentrated in vacuo to the crude free base. The product was dissolved in 25 mL acetonitrile and 2.0 eq. aqueous HCl was added. After 10 minutes the reaction was concentrated in vacuo and chased with 30 ml water and vacuum dried over P₂O₅.

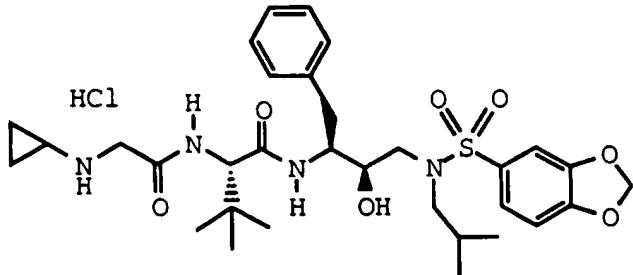
10

EXAMPLE 45

Preparation of 2S-[N-(2-methoxyethyl)aminoacetyl]aminol-N-[2R-
15 hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-
methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl-
3,3-dimethylbutanamide•hydrochloride

A solution of 2.0 g of 2S-[(chloroacetyl)amino]-N-[2R-
20 hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-
methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl-3,3-
dimethylbutanamide and 4.8 mL 2-methoxyethyl amine (20
eq.) in 8 mL tetrahydrofuran was stirred 4 hours at room
temperature. The reaction was concentrated in vacuo and
25 partitioned between ethyl acetate and saturated aqueous
sodium bicarbonate. The combined organics were washed
with brine, dried, and concentrated in vacuo to the crude
free base. The product was taken up in 25 mL
acetonitrile and 2.0 eq. aqueous HCl was added. After 10
30 minutes the reaction was concentrated in vacuo and chased
with 30 ml water and vacuum dried over P₂O₅.

123

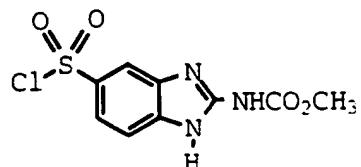
EXAMPLE 46Preparation of 2S-[[(N-cyclopropylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-

- 5 [2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl-3,3-dimethylbutanamide•hydrochloride

A solution of 2.0 g of 2S-[(chloroacetyl)amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethylbutanamide and 4.5 mL cyclopropyl amine (20 eq.) in 8 mL tetrahydrofuran was stirred 24 hours at room temperature. The reaction was concentrated in vacuo and partitioned between ethyl acetate and saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate. The combined organics were washed with brine, dried, and concentrated in vacuo to the crude free base. The product was taken up in 25 mL acetonitrile and 2.0 eq. aqueous HCl was added. After 10 minutes the reaction was concentrated in vacuo and chased with 30 mL water and vacuum dried over P₂O₅ to yield 1.5g white solid.

EXAMPLE 47

25

Preparation of 5-chlorosulfonyl-2-carbomethoxyamino-benzimidazole

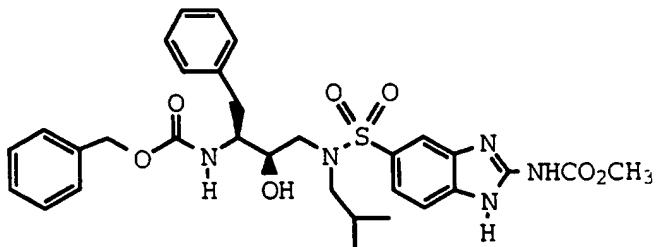
A solution of 2-carbomethoxyamino-benzimidazole (5.0 g, 0.026 mole) in chlorosulfonic acid (35.00 mL) was stirred at 0°C for 30 minutes and at room temperature for 3 hours. The resulting dark colored reaction mixture was 5 poured into an ice-water mixture (200 mL), and stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes. The resulting precipitate was filtered and washed with cold water (500 mL). The solid was dried overnight under high vacuum in a desiccator over NaOH pellets to give 5-chlorosulfonyl-2- 10 carbomethoxyamino-benzimidazole (5.9 g, 78%) as a grey powder. ^1H NMR (DMSO- d_6) d: 3.89 (s, 3H), 7.55 (d, J = 8.4 Hz, 1H), 7.65 (d, J = 8.4 Hz, 1H), 7.88 (s, 1H).

(German Patent DE 3826036)

15

EXAMPLE 48

Preparation of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[N¹-[(2-carbomethoxyamino-benzimidazol-5-yl)sulfonyl]-N¹-(2-methylpropyl)aminol-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]carbamic acid phenylmethyl ester



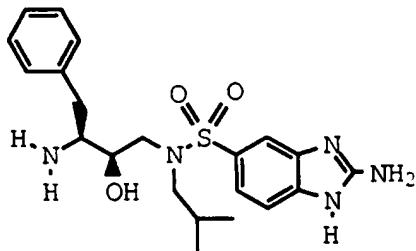
20

To a cold solution of N-[3S-[(phenylmethoxycarbonyl) 25 amino]-2R-hydroxy-4-phenylbutyl]-N-(2-methylpropyl)amine (5.0 g, 13.5 mmol) in dichloromethane (70 mL) was added triethylamine (5.95 g, 54.0 mmol) followed by the addition of 5-chlorosulfonyl-2-carbomethoxyamino-benzimidazole (4.29 g, 14.85 mmol) in small portions as a solid. The reaction mixture was stirred at 0°C for 30 minutes and at room temperature for 2.5 hours when 30 reaction of the amino alcohol was complete. The mixture was cooled and filtered, and the filtrate was concentrated. The resulting residue was dissolved in

EtOAc (200mL), washed successively with cold 5% citric acid (3 x 50 mL), saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate (3 x 50 mL) and water (3 x 100 mL), then dried (Na_2SO_4), concentrated and dried under vacuum. The residue was 5 triturated with methanol, cooled, filtered, washed with MeOH-EtOAc (1:1, v/v) and dried in a desiccator to give pure N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(2-carbomethoxyamino-benzimidazol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)-amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl) propyl]carbamic acid phenylmethyl ester (6.02 g, 72 %) as 10 a light brown powder: FABMS: $m/z = 630$ ($\text{M}+\text{Li}$); HRMS: calcd. for $\text{C}_{31}\text{H}_{38}\text{N}_5\text{O}_7\text{S}$ ($\text{M}+\text{H}$) 624.2492, found 624.2488.

EXAMPLE 49

- 15 Preparation of 2R-hydroxy-3-[(2-amino-benzimidazol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methyl-propyl)aminol-1S-(phenylmethyl) propylamine

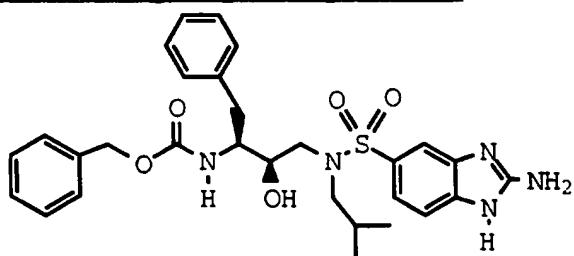


- 20 A solution of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(2-carbomethoxyamino-benzimidazol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]carbamic acid phenylmethyl ester (0.36 g, 0.58 mmol) in 2.5 N methanolic KOH (2.00 mL) was heated at 70°C under a nitrogen atmosphere for 3 hours.
- 25 The reaction mixture was diluted with water (10 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (3 x 15 mL). The combined organic extracts were washed with brine, dried (Na_2SO_4) and concentrated. The resulting residue was purified by reverse-phase HPLC using a 10-90% $\text{CH}_3\text{CN}/\text{H}_2\text{O}$ gradient (30 min) at a flow rate of 70 mL/min. The appropriate fractions were combined and freeze dried to give pure 2R-hydroxy-3-[(2-amino-benzimidazol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-

126

methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenyl-methyl)propylamine (0.22 g, 58%) as a white powder: FAB-MS m/z = 432 ($M+H$); HRMS: calcd. for $C_{21}H_{30}N_5O_3S$ ($M+H$) 432.2069, found 432.2071.

5

EXAMPLE 50Preparation of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(2-amino-benzimidazol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propylcarbamic acid phenylmethyl ester

10

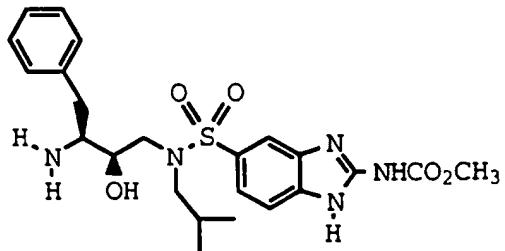
To a solution of 2R-hydroxy-3-[(2-amino-benzimidazol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methyl-propyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propylamine (0.22 g, 0.33 mmol) in THF (3.00 mL),
15 triethylamine (0.11 g, 1.1 mmol) and benzyloxycarbonyl succinimide (0.09 g, 0.36 mmol) were added, and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 16 hours. The solution was concentrated, and the residue was partitioned between EtOAc (15 mL) and saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate. The organic phase was washed with brine, dried (Na_2SO_4), and concentrated. The resulting residue was purified by reverse-phase HPLC using a 10-90% CH_3CN/H_2O gradient (30 min) at a flow rate of 70 mL/min. The appropriate fractions were combined and freeze dried to give pure N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(2-amino-benzimidazol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]carbamic acid phenylmethyl ester (0.12 g, 61%) as a white powder: FAB-MS m/z = 566 ($M+H$); HRMS: calcd. for $C_{29}H_{36}N_5O_5S$ 566.2437 ($M+H$), found
20 566.2434.

25

30

EXAMPLE 51

Preparation of 2R-hydroxy-3-[(2-carbomethoxyamino-benzimidazol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)aminol-1S-(phenylmethyl)propylamine



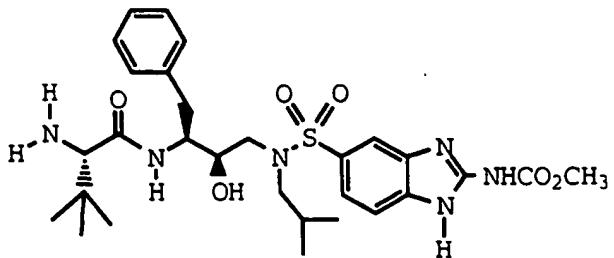
A solution of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(2-carbomethoxyamino-benzimidazole-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)-amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propylcarbamic acid phenylmethyl ester (2.5 g, 0.4 mmol) in MeOH (10 mL) and THF (50 mL) was hydrogenated in the presence of 10% Pd/C (1.2 g) at room temperature at 60 psi for 16 hours. The catalyst was removed by filtration, and the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was triturated with ether and filtered. The solid substance thus obtained was washed with ether and dried *in vacuo* to afford pure 2R-hydroxy-3-[(2-carbomethoxyamino-benzimidazol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)aminol-1S-(phenylmethyl)propylamine (1.5 g, 77%) as an off white powder: $R_f = 12.8$ min; FAB-MS $m/z = 490$ ($M+H$); HRMS: calcd. for $C_{23}H_{32}N_5O_5S$ 490.2124 ($M+H$), found 490.2142.

EXAMPLE 52

25

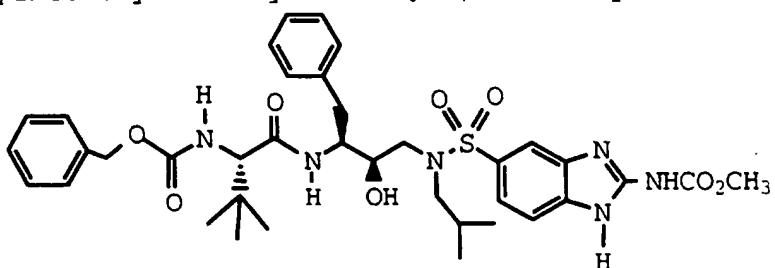
Preparation of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(2-carbomethoxyamino-benzimidazol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)aminol-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-amino-3,3-dimethylbutanamide

128



Part A: Preparation of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[N¹-[(2-carbomethoxyamino-benzimidazol-5-yl)sulfonyl]-N¹-(2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl-2S-[(phenylmethoxy-carbonyl)amino]-3,3-dimethylbutanamide

5



To a solution of N-carbobenzyloxycarbonyl-L-tert-leucine (0.65 g, 2.45 mmol) in DMF (10 mL) was added HOBr (0.5 g, 3.22 mmol) and EDC (0.49 g, 2.55 mmol), and the resulting mixture was stirred at 0°C for 2 hours. Then a solution of 2R-hydroxy-3-[(2-carbomethoxyamino-benzimidazol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propylamine (1.2 g, 2.45 mmol) in DMF (4 mL) and N-methyl morpholine (0.74 g, 7.3 mmol) was added, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 16 hours. The DMF was then distilled away *in vacuo*, and the remaining residue was partitioned between cold 1N aqueous HCl (100 mL) and EtOAc (200 mL). The organic phase was washed successively with cold 1N HCl (2 x 50 mL), brine (2 x 50 mL), 0.25 N NaOH (3 x 50 mL), brine, dried (Na₂SO₄) and concentrated *in vacuo*. The resulting residue was purified by silica gel flash column chromatography using EtOAc as the eluent to afford 1.5 g (83%) of pure N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(2-carbomethoxyamino-benzimidazol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl-2S-[(phenylmethoxy-carbonyl)amino]-3,3-dimethyl

10

15

20

25

butanamide: R_t = 21.2 min; FAB-MS m/z = 737 ($M+H$), HRMS: calcd. for $C_{37}H_{49}N_6O_8S$ 737.3333 ($M+H$), found 737.3334.

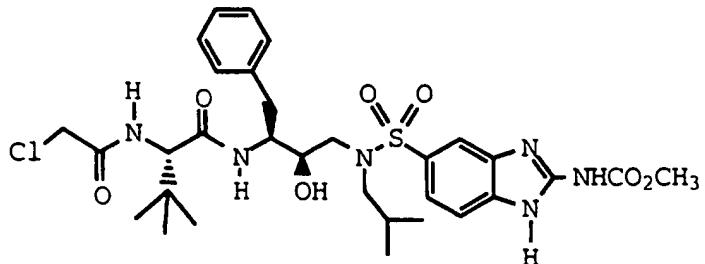
Part B: Preparation of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(2-carbomethoxyamino-benzimidazol-5-yl) sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-amino-3,3-dimethylbutanamide

A solution of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(2-carbomethoxyamino-benzimidazol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-[(phenylmethoxycarbonyl)amino]-3,3-dimethylbutanamide (4.0 g, 5.4 mmol) in MeOH (15 mL) and THF (65 mL) was hydrogenated in the presence of 10% Pd/C (2.0 g) at room temperature at 50 psi for 16 hours. The catalyst was removed by filtration, and the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was triturated with ether and filtered. The solid residue was washed with ether and dried in vacuo to afford N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(2-carbomethoxyamino-benzimidazol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-amino-3,3-dimethylbutanamide (2.9 g, 88%) as a pale yellow powder. A portion of the material was purified by reverse-phase HPLC using a 10-90% CH_3CN/H_2O gradient (30 min) at a flow rate of 70 mL/min. The appropriate fractions were combined and freeze dried to give pure N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(2-carbomethoxyamino-benzimidazol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-amino-3,3-dimethylbutanamide as a white powder: R_t = 13.9 min; FAB-MS m/z = 609 ($M+Li$), 603 ($M+H$); HRMS: calcd. for $C_{29}H_{43}N_6O_6S$ 603.2965 ($M+H$), found 603.2972.

EXAMPLE 53

35 Preparation of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(2-carbomethoxyamino-benzimidazol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)aminol]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-[(chloroacetyl)aminol]-3,3-

130

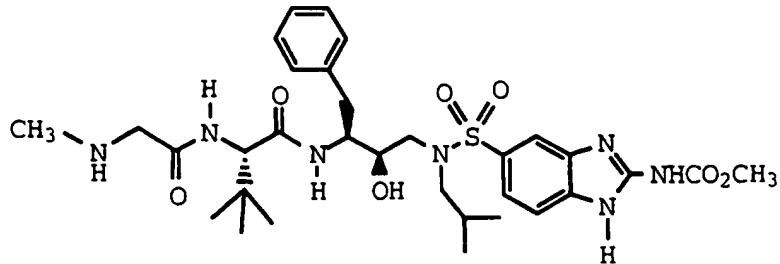
dimethylbutanamide

A mixture of chloroacetic acid (0.32 g, 3.39 mmol), HOBr (0.78 g, 5.0 mmol), and EDC (0.65 g, 3.39 mmol) in DMF (5 mL) was stirred at 0°C for 1 hour, and was then added to a solution of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(2-carbomethoxyamino-benzimidazol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl-2S-amino-3,3-dimethylbutanamide (2.0 g, 3.3 mmol) in DMF (5 mL). The resulting mixture was stirred at 0°C for 2 hours, and at room temperature for 1 hour when the reaction was complete. The DMF was removed *in vacuo*. The resulting residue was dissolved in EtOAc (50 mL) and washed successively with saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate (3 x 25 mL), brine, dried (Na_2SO_4), and concentrated under reduced pressure. The resulting material was crystallized from EtOAc to give 1.2 g (53%) of pure N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(2-carbomethoxyamino-benzimidazol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl-2S-[(chloroacetyl)amino]-3,3-dimethylbutanamide as a white powder: m.p. 253°C (decomp); R_f 18.1 min; FAB-MS m/z = 679 ($M+H$), HRMS: calcd. for $C_{31}H_{44}N_6O_7SCl$ 679.2681 ($M+H$), found 679.2690.

25

EXAMPLE 54

Preparation of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(2-carbomethoxyamino-benzimidazol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl-2S-[(N-methylaminoacetyl)amino]-3,3-dimethylbutanamide

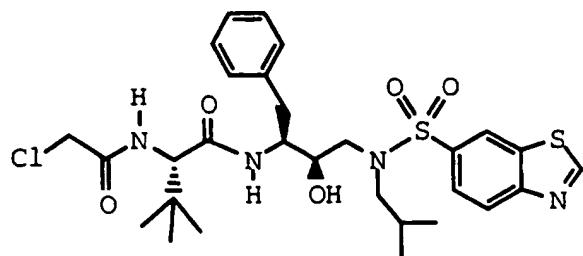


N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(2-carbomethoxyamino-benzimidazol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl-
 5 2S-[(chloroacetyl)amino]-3,3-dimethylbutanamide (0.7 g,
 1.03 mmol) was dissolved in THF (3.00 mL). Methylamine
 (0.8 mL, 40% solution in water) was added and the
 reaction was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours.
 The mixture was diluted with water (10 mL), and extracted
 10 with ethyl acetate (2 x 20 mL). The combined organic
 extracts were washed with brine, dried (Na_2SO_4), and
 concentrated in vacuo. The resulting residue was
 purified by reverse-phase HPLC using a 5-70% $\text{CH}_3\text{CN}/\text{H}_2\text{O}$
 gradient (30 min) at a flow rate of 70 mL/min. The
 15 appropriate fractions were combined and freeze dried to
 give pure N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(2-carbomethoxyamino-
 benzimidazol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
 (phenylmethyl)propyl-2S-[(N-methylaminoacetyl)amino]-3,3-
 dimethylbutanamide as a white powder: R_t 14.1 min; FAB-MS
 20 $m/z = 674$ ($\text{M}+\text{H}$) ; HRMS: $\text{C}_{32}\text{H}_{48}\text{N}_7\text{O}_7\text{S}$ calcd. 674.3336
 ($\text{M}+\text{H}$), found 674.3361.

EXAMPLE 55

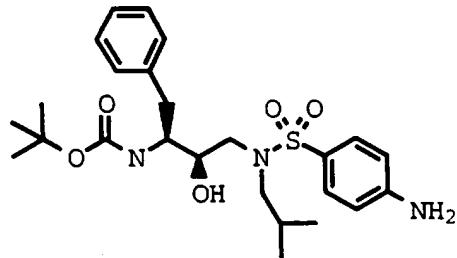
25 Preparation of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(benzothiazol-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl-2S-[(chloroacetyl)amino]-3,3-dimethylbutanamide

132



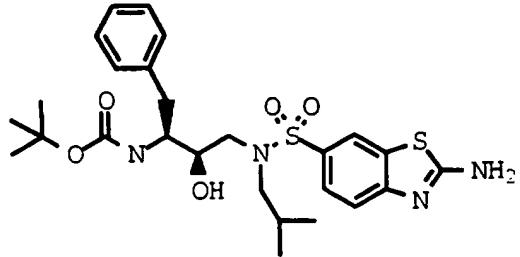
Part A: Preparation of [2R-hydroxy-3-[(4-aminophenylsulfonyl)(2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propylcarbamic acid t-butyl ester

5



A mixture of [2R-hydroxy-3-[(4-aminophenylsulfonyl)(2-methylpropyl)-amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propylamine 3.7 g (9.45 mmol) and BOC-ON (2.33 g, 9.45 mmol) and
10 triethylamine (0.954 g, 9.45 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (60 mL) was stirred for 16 h and concentrated in vacuo. The residue was dissolved in dichloromethane (200 mL), washed with sodium hydroxide (1N, 100 mL), citric acid (5%, 100 mL), dried (MgSO₄), and concentrated to afford 1.18 g
15 (94%) of the desired product as a white solid.

Part B: Preparation of [2R-Hydroxy-3-[(2-aminobenzothiazole-6-sulfonyl)-(2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propylcarbamic acid t-butyl ester

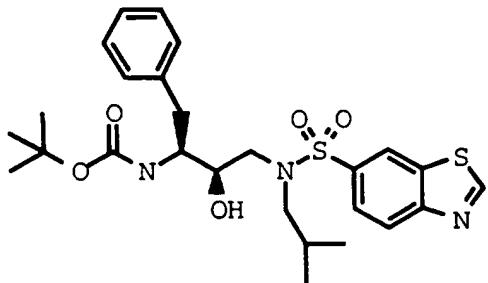


20

The [2R-hydroxy-3-[(4-aminophenylsulfonyl)(2-

methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propylcarbamic acid t-butyl ester 1.12 g (2.279 mmol) was added to a well mixed powder of anhydrous copper sulfate (4.48 g) and potassium thiocyanate (5.60 g) followed by dry methanol (35 mL) and the resulting black-brown suspension was heated at reflux for 2h. The reaction mixture turned grey. The reaction mixture was filtered and the filtrate was diluted with water (50 mL) and heated at reflux. Ethanol was added to the reaction mixture, cooled and filtered. The filtrate upon concentration afforded a residue which was chromatographed (ethyl acetate:methanol 90:10) to afford 0.80 g (78%) of the deprotected compound as a solid. This was directly reprotected via the following procedure; (2.25 g, 5.005 mmol) BOC-ON (1.24 g), and triethylamine (0.505 g, 5.005 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (20 mL) was stirred at room temperature for 18h. The reaction mixture was concentrated and the residue was dissolved in dichloromethane (200 mL) and was washed with sodium hydroxide (1N, 100 mL), citric acid (5%, 100 mL) dried (MgSO₄) and concentrated to afford a residue which was chromatographed (ethyl acetate:hexane 3:1) to afford 1.8 g (65%) of the desired product as a solid.

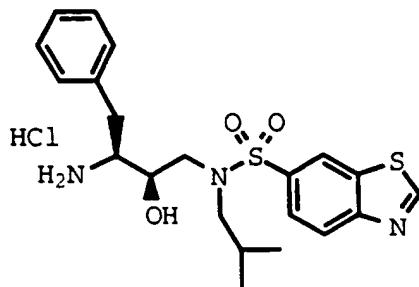
Part C: Preparation of [2R-hydroxy-3-[(benzothiazole-6-sulfonyl)(2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propylcarbamic acid t-butyl ester



The product of part B above (1.80 g, 3.2755 mmol) was added to a solution of isoamyl nitrite (0.88 mL) in dioxane (20 mL) and the mixture was heated at 85°C. After the cessation of evolution of nitrogen, the

reaction mixture was concentrated and the residue was purified by chromatography (hexane:ethyl acetate 1:1) to afford 1.25 g (78%) of the desired product as a solid.

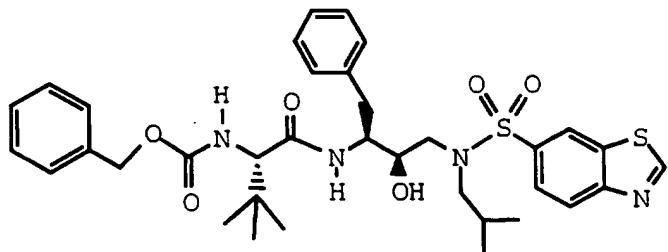
- 5 Part D: Preparation of [2R-hydroxy-3-[(benzothiazole-6-sulfonyl)(2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propylamine•hydrochloride



The product of part C above was deprotected via the
10 following procedure; (1.25 g, 2.3385 mmol) was added dioxane/HCl (4N, 10 mL) and was stirred at room temperature for 2h and concentrated. Excess HCl was chased with toluene to afford 1.0 g (quantitative yield) of the desired product as its HCl salt.

15

- Part E: Preparation of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[(benzothiazol-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)-amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-[(N-benzyloxy)carbonyl]amino]-3,3-dimethyl butanamide



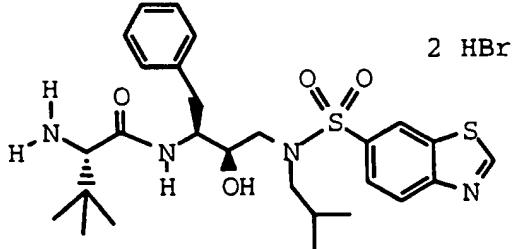
20

- A mixture of N-benzyloxycarbonyl-t-butylglycine (2.0 g, 7.538 mmol), HOBT (1.02 g, 7.55 mmol), and EDC (1.45 g, 7.55 mmol) in DMF (20 mL) was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. Then [2R-hydroxy-3-[[(benzothiazol-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propylamine hydrochloride (3.825 g, 7.54 mmol) and N-

methylmorpholine (3.80 g) were added and the stirring continued for 18 hours. The DMF was removed *in vacuo*, the residue was dissolved in dichloromethane (500 mL), and washed with citric acid (1N, 100 mL), sodium bicarbonate (100 mL), brine (200 mL), dried, filtered, and concentrated to afford 4.69 g (91%) of pure N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(benzothiazol-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl-2S-[N-(phenylmethoxy carbonyl)amino]-3,3-dimethylbutanamide.

10

Part F: Preparation of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(benzothiazol-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl-2S-(amino)-3,3-dimethylbutanamide•dihydrobromide



15 A solution of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(benzothiazol-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl-2S-[N-(phenylmethoxycarbonyl)amino]-3,3-dimethylbutanamide (4.69 g, 6.89 mmol) in dichloroethane (200 mL) was treated with HBr (48% in acetic acid, 7.1 mL), and
20 the reaction mixture was stirred for 2 hours at room temperature. The reaction mixture was concentrated and the residue was washed with diethyl ether several times to afford 4.88 g of the desired dihydrobromide product as a powder: high resolution FAB-MS Calcd for C₂₇H₃₈N₄O₄S₂:
25 547.2413, found: 547.2429 (M+H).

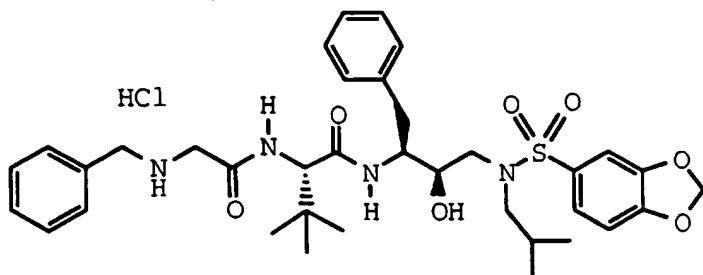
Part G: Preparation of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(benzothiazol-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl-2S-[(chloroacetyl)amino]-3,3-dimethylbutanamide
30 A mixture of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(benzothiazol-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)

propyl]-2S-(amino)-3,3-dimethylbutanamide dihydrobromide (3.5 g, 4.9388 mmol), chloroacetic anhydride (0.929 g, 5.44 mmol) and triethylamine (1.097 g, 10.86 mmol) in dichloromethane (35 mL) was stirred at room temperature 5 for 16 hours. The reaction mixture was washed with citric acid (1N, 30 mL), sodium bicarbonate (30 mL), brine (30 mL), dried, filtered and concentrated to afford 3.0 g of the desired product.

10

EXAMPLE 56

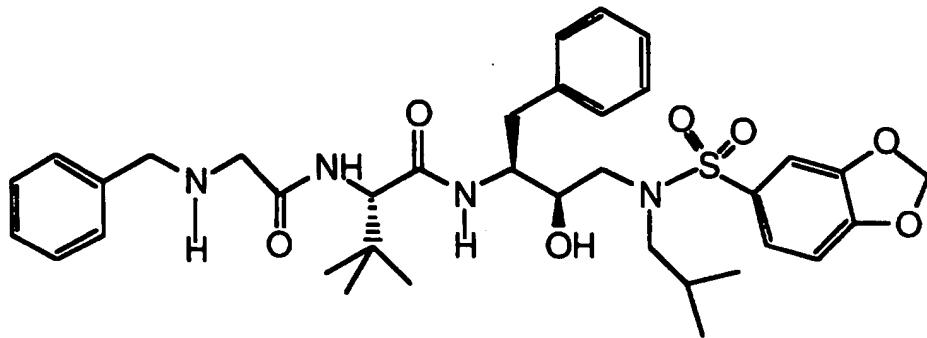
Preparation of 2S-[[N-(phenylmethyl)aminoacetyl]aminol-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethylbutanamide hydrochloride



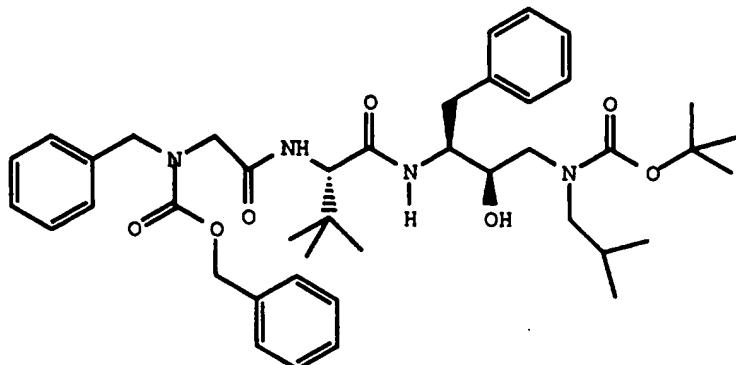
To a solution of 2.0 g (3.3 mmol) 2S-[[(chloroacetyl)amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[[(1,3-benzodiox-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethylbutanamide in 10 mL of tetrahydrofuran was added 2.2 mL of benzylamine. After 1 hour, an additional 2.0 mL of benzylamine was added. After 30 min, the reaction mixture was concentrated in vacuo, hexane was added and the hexane decanted away from the oil. The oil was dissolved in ethyl acetate, washed with saturated sodium bicarbonate, brine, dried with magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated the crude product. This was dissolved in diethyl ether and hexane added, which resulted in an insoluble oil. The solvents were decanted from the oil and the oily residue concentrated under reduced pressure to afford 1.85 g.

This was dissolved in ethyl acetate and poured into hexane which resulted in an insoluble oil. The solvents were decanted and the residue concentrated to afford 1.56 g of the desired product, m/e = 687 (M+Li).

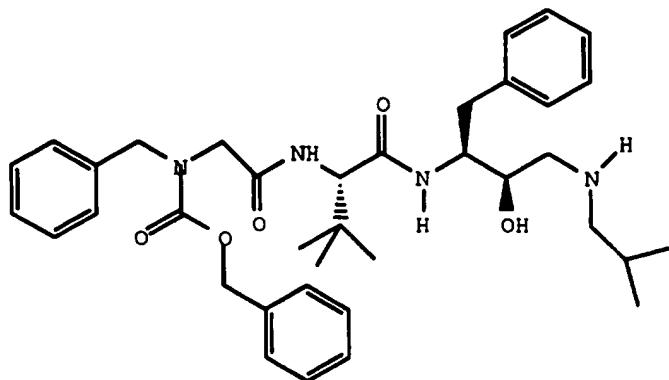
5

EXAMPLE 56A

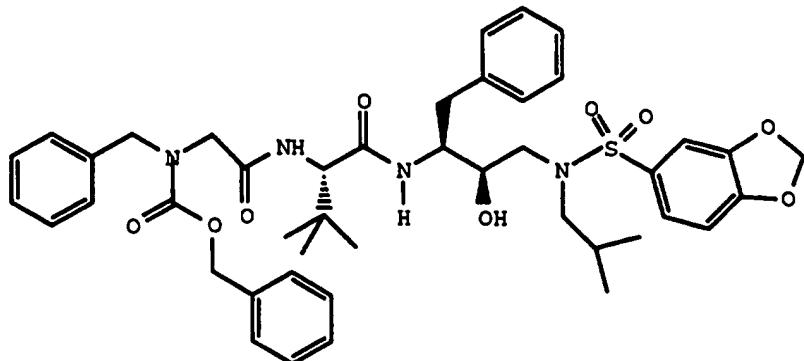
- 10 Preparation of 2S-[[N-(phenylmethyl)aminoacyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethylbutanamide
- 15 Part A: 2S-[[N-(phenylmethyl)aminoacyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,1-dimethylethoxy)carbonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethylbutanamide from Example 38 is dissolved in tetrahydrofuran and triethyl amine is added with stirring
- 20 and cooling to about 0° C. To the cooled solution is added carbobenzyloxychloride (CBZ chloride) and stirring is continued for about 24 hours at room temperature. The solvent is removed under reduced pressure with a rotary evaporator and the residue is dissolved in ethyl acetate.
- 25 The organic phase is washed with 5% citric acid, sat. sodium bicarbonate, brine, dried over sodium sulfate and filtered. The solvent is removed under reduced pressure with a rotary evaporator to provide



Part B: The protected compound from Part A is dissolved in dioxane/HCl and it is stirred for about 2 hours at
5 room temperature. The solvent is removed and the residue is dried in vacuo to produce the amine

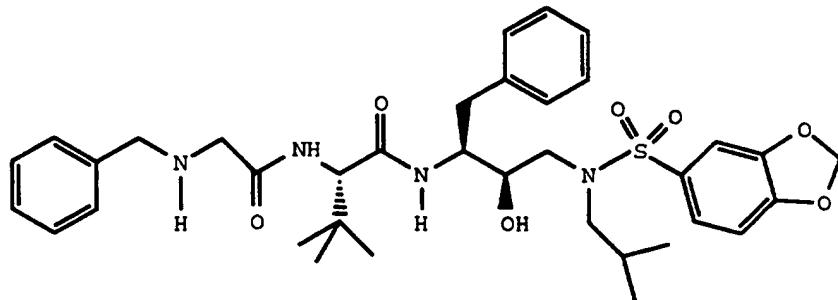


10 which is chromatographed if desired. The amine residue is stirred in ethyl acetate, 1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl sulfonyl chloride from Example 28 is added followed by triethylamine and the mixture is stirred at about room temperature. The reaction mixture is diluted with ethyl acetate, is washed with saturated sodium bicarbonate (saturated) and brine, is dried ($MgSO_4$) and is concentrated to provide
15



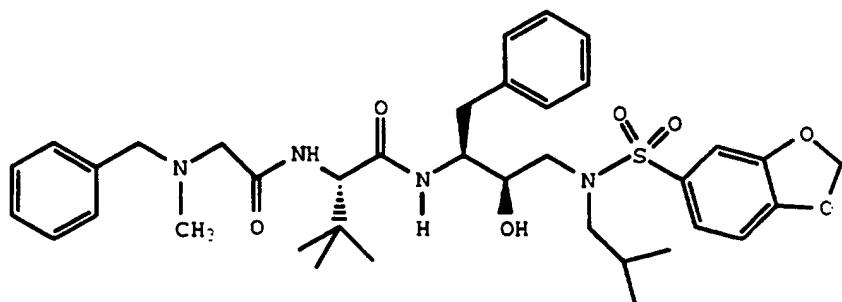
The residue is chromatographed if desired.

Part C: Compound from Part C is dissolved in ethanol and
5 is hydrogenated at 45 psi of hydrogen in the presence of
5% Pd(C) catalyst. The solution is filtered to remove
the 5% Pd(C) catalyst. The filtrate is evaporated under
reduced pressure using a rotary evaporator to provide the
amine



10

EXAMPLE 56B



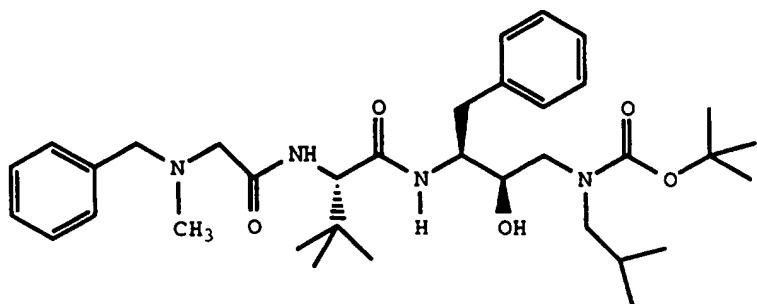
15

Preparation of 2S-[(N-(phenylmethyl)-N-methyl
aminoacyl)amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-

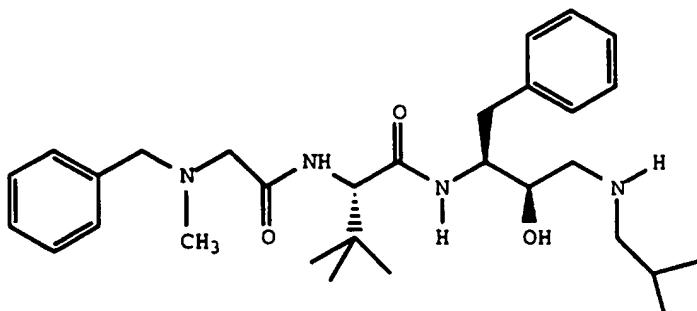
140

yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethylbutanamide

N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,1-dimethylethoxy)carbonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-((chloroacetyl)amino)-3,3-dimethylbutanamide from Example 38, Part D is added to N-methyl-N-benzyl amine in tetrahydrofuran with stirring at about room temperature. The solvent is removed under reduced pressure using a rotary evaporator and the residue is washed with dilute HCl, saturated NaHCO₃, water, brine and dried to provide



The N-methyl-N-benzylamine compound is dissolved in dioxane/HCl and it is stirred for about 2 hours at room temperature. The solvent is removed and the residue is dried in vacuo to produce the secondary amine

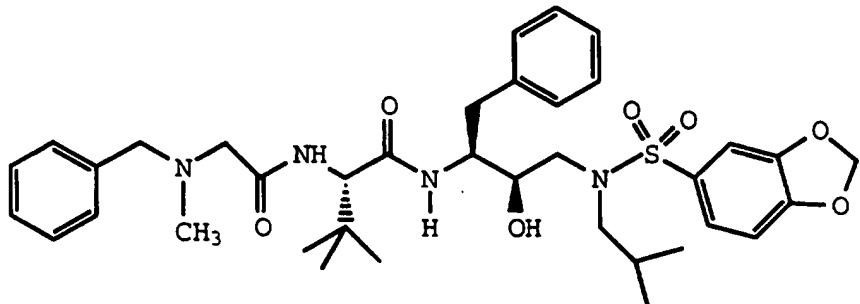


20

The secondary amine residue is stirred in ethyl acetate, 1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl sulfonyl chloride from Example 28 is added followed by triethylamine and the mixture is

141

stirred at about room temperature. The reaction mixture is diluted with ethyl acetate, is washed with saturated sodium bicarbonate (saturated) and brine, is dried (MgSO_4) and is concentrated to provide



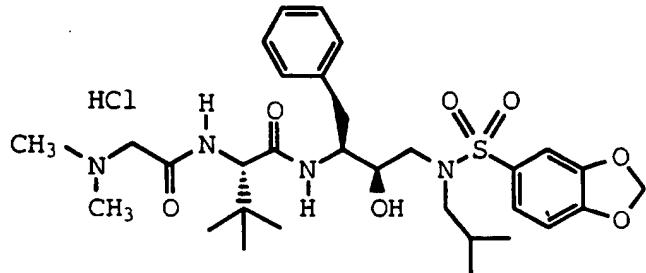
5

The residue is chromatographed if further purification is desired

EXAMPLE 57

10

Preparation of 2S-[N,N-(dimethyl)aminoacetyl]aminol-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl-3,3-dimethylbutanamide·hydrochloride

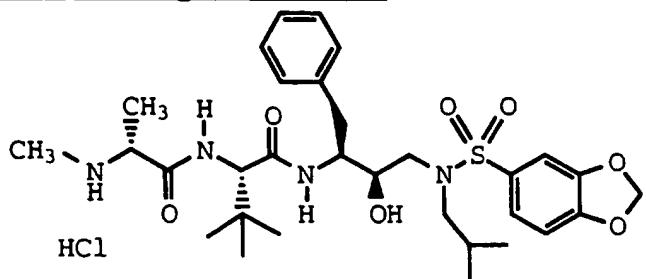


15

To a solution of 2.0 g (3.3 mmol) 2S-[{chloroacetyl} amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodiox-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl-3,3-dimethylbutanamide in 8 mL of tetrahydrofuran was added 8.2 mL of 40% aqueous dimethylamine. After 2 hours, the solvents were removed in vacuo. The residue was dissolved in ethyl acetate, washed with brine, dried with magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated in vacuo to afford 1.97 g of the desired product, m/e = 619 ($\text{M}+\text{H}$).

EXAMPLE 58

Preparation of 2S-[2R-(N-methylamino)propionyl]aminol-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl-3,3-dimethylbutanamide·hydrochloride



10 Part A: A solution of 1.0 grams (4.9 mmol) of N-t-BOC-N-methyl-D-alanine in 5 mL of anhydrous DMF was cooled to 0°C, charged with 0.9 grams (6.4 mmol) of HOBT and 0.9 grams (4.9 mmol) of EDC and stirred for four hours. The reaction solution was then charged with a solution of 2.3 grams (4.3 mmol) of 2S-amino-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodiox-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl-3,3-dimethylbutaneamide and 1.3 grams (12.8 mmol) of 4-methylmorpholine in 5 mL of anhydrous DMF and stirred for 15 hours. The solvents
15 were removed in vacuo and the residue was partitioned between 150 mL of ethyl acetate and 50 mL of 5% potassium hydrogen sulfate solution. The layers were separated, and the organic layer was washed with 50 mL each of saturated sodium bicarbonate solution, water and brine,
20 then dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated to afford 2.9 grams of the desired product as a white solid, m/e = 725 (M+Li).
25

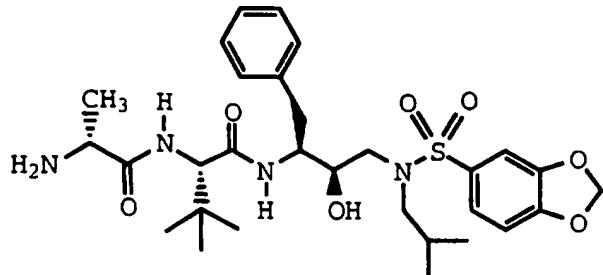
Part B: A solution of 2.5 g of the compound from part A in 20 mL 4N HCl-dioxane and stirred for 1 hour at room temperature. Concentration in vacuo followed by trituration with Et₂O yielded 2.2 g white solid. The

product was vacuum dried over P₂O₅ to yield 2.1 g final product.

EXAMPLE 59

5

Preparation of 2S-[2R-aminopropionylamino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl) sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl-3,3-dimethylbutanamide



10

Part A: Preparation of 2S-[2R-[(phenylmethoxycarbonyl)amino]propionylamino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl-3,3-dimethylbutanamide

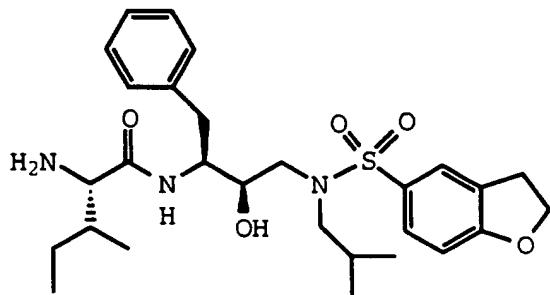
To a solution of 1.0 g (4.5 mmol) of N-carbobenzyloxycarbonyl-D-alanine and 1.03 g of HOBr in 9 mL of anhydrous N,N-dimethylformamide at 0°C, was added 20 0.95 g of EDC coupling agent. After 2 hours at 0°C, 2.39 g (4.5 mmol) of 2S-amino-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl-3,3-dimethylbutanamide was added. After stirring overnight, the solvents were removed in vacuo. the residue was dissolved in ethyl acetate, washed with 5% potassium hydrogen sulfate, saturated sodium bicarbonate, brine, dried with magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated in vacuo to afford 3.2 g of crude material. This was chromatographed on 150 g of silica gel using 50-80% ethyl acetate/hexane as eluent to afford 2.3 g of the desired product, which was used directly in the next step.

Part B: Preparation of 2S-[(2R-aminopropionyl)amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-
5 dimethylbutanamide

A solution of 2.3 g of the product of Part A in 20 mL of methanol was hydrogenated over 1.0 g of 4% Palladium-on-carbon under 50 psig of hydrogen for 1 hour. The catalyst was removed by filtration. The solvents were removed in vacuo to afford 1.5 g of the desired product, m/e = 611 (M+Li).

EXAMPLE 60

15



Preparation of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[[(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-amino-3S-methylpentanamide

20

Part A: Preparation of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[[(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-[(phenylmethoxycarbonyl)amino]-3S-methylpentanamide

25

A solution of 5.8 grams (22.0 mmol) of N-CBZ-L-isoleucine in 45 mL of anhydrous N,N-dimethylformamide (DMF) was cooled to 0°C and charged with 3.9 grams (28.7 mmol) of N-hydroxybenzotriazole (HOBT) and 4.2 grams (22.0 mmol) of 30 1-(3-Dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (EDC). The ice bath was removed after 20

minutes and stirring was continued for an additional 40 minutes. The reaction solution was then charged with a solution of 8.0 grams (19.1 mmol) of 2R-hydroxy-3-[(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propylamine and 2.2 grams (22.0 mmol) of 4-methylmorpholine in 25 mL of anhydrous DMF and stirred for 15 hours. The solvents were removed in vacuo and the residue was partitioned between 300 mL of ethyl acetate and 120 mL of 5% potassium hydrogen sulfate solution.

5 The layers were separated, and the organic layer was washed with 120 mL each of saturated sodium bicarbonate solution, water, and brine, then dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated to afford 16.7 grams of crude material. The crude material was

10 crystallized from ethanol, the solid was isolated by filtration, rinsed with one 50 mL portion of hexane, and air-dried to yield 12.0 grams (94%) of the desired product, m/e = 672 (M+Li).

15 Part B: Preparation of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-amino-3S-methylpentanamide

20 A Fischer-Porter bottle equipped with a magnetic stir bar was charged with 11.9 grams (17.9 mmol) of the product from Part A and 75 mL of tetrahydrofuran (THF). The solution was hydrogenated in the presence of 5 grams of 10% palladium-on-carbon catalyst (50% water by weight) under 50 psig of hydrogen for 4 hours at room

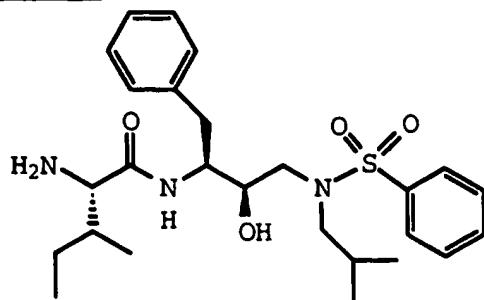
25 temperature. The catalyst was removed by filtration, and the solvents removed in vacuo. The residue was dissolved in 300 mL of ethyl acetate, washed with 120 mL each of saturated sodium bicarbonate solution and of brine, then dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, filtered and

30 concentrated under reduced pressure to afford 8.8 grams of the desired product, m/e = 532 (M+H).

35

EXAMPLE 61

Preparation of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(phenylsulfonyl) (2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl) propyl]-2S-amino-
5 3S-methylpentanamide



Part A: Preparation of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(phenylsulfonyl)
10 (2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-[(phenylmethoxycarbonyl) amino]-3S-methylpentanamide

A solution of 6.0 grams (22.6 mmol) of N-CBZ-L-isoleucine in 45 mL of anhydrous DMF was cooled to 0°C and charged with 4.0 grams (29.5 mmol) of HOBT and 4.3 grams (22.6 mmol) of EDC. The ice bath was removed after 20 minutes and stirring was continued for an additional 40 minutes. The reaction solution was then charged with a solution of 7.4 grams (19.7 mmol) of 2R-hydroxy-3-[(phenylsulfonyl) (2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
15 (phenylmethyl)propylamine and 2.3 grams (22.6 mmol) of 4-methylmorpholine in 25 mL of anhydrous DMF and stirred for 18 hours. The solvents were removed in vacuo and the residue was partitioned between 300 mL of ethyl acetate and 120 mL of 5% potassium hydrogen sulfate solution.
The layers were separated, and the organic layer was washed with 120 mL each of saturated sodium bicarbonate solution, water and brine, then dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated to afford 13 grams of crude material. The crude material crystallized
25 from ethanol, the solid was isolated by filtration, rinsed with one 50 mL portion of hexane, and air-dried to

30

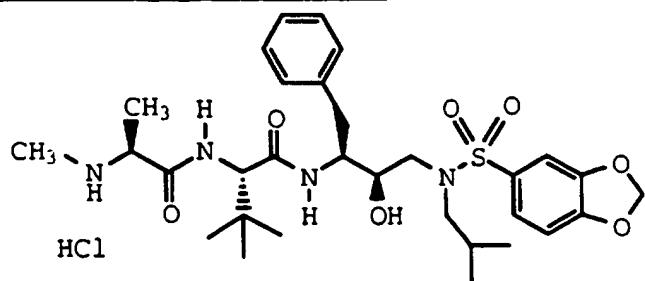
yield 10.3 grams (84%) of the desired product, m/e = 630 (M+Li).

Part B: Preparation of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(phenylsulfonyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-amino-
5 3S-methylpentanamide

A Fischer-Porter bottle equipped with a magnetic stir bar was charged with 10.2 grams (16.4 mmol) of the product from Part A and 75 mL of tetrahydrofuran (THF). The solution was hydrogenated in the presence of 4 grams of 10% palladium-on-carbon catalyst (50% water by weight) under 50 psig of hydrogen for 3 hours at room temperature. The catalyst was removed by filtration, and the solvents removed in vacuo. The residue was dissolved in 300 mL of ethyl acetate and washed with 120 mL each of saturated sodium bicarbonate solution and brine, then dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated in vacuo to afford 7.4 grams of the desired 15 product, m/e = 490 (M+H).

EXAMPLE 62

Preparation of 2S-[[2S-(N-methylamino)propionyl]aminol-N-
25 [2R-hydroxy-3-[[1,3-benzodioxol-5-y1] sulfonyl](2-
methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-
dimethylbutanamide•hydrochloride



30 Part A: Preparation of 2S-[[2S-[N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-N-(methylamino)propionyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[1,3-benzodioxol-5-y1] sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-

(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethylbutanamide•hydrochloride

A solution of 1.0 grams (4.9 mmol) of N-t-BOC-N-methyl-L-alanine in 5 mL of anhydrous DMF was cooled to 0°C,
5 charged with 0.9 grams (6.4 mmol) of HOBT and 0.9 grams (4.9 mmol) of EDC and stirred for four hours. The reaction solution was then charged with a solution of 2.3 grams (4.3 mmol) of 2S-amino-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodiox-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethylbutaneamide and 1.3 grams (12.8 mmol) of 4-methylmorpholine in 5 mL of anhydrous DMF and stirred for 15 hours. The solvents were removed in vacuo and the residue was partitioned between 150 mL of ethyl acetate and 50 mL of 5% potassium hydrogen sulfate solution. The layers were separated, and the organic layer was washed with 50 mL each of saturated sodium bicarbonate solution, water and brine, then dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated in vacuo to afford 3.1 grams (100%) of the
15 desired product as a white solid, m/e = 725 (M+Li).
20

Part B: Preparation of 2S-[(2S-(N-methylamino)propionyl)amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethylbutanamide•hydrochloride
25

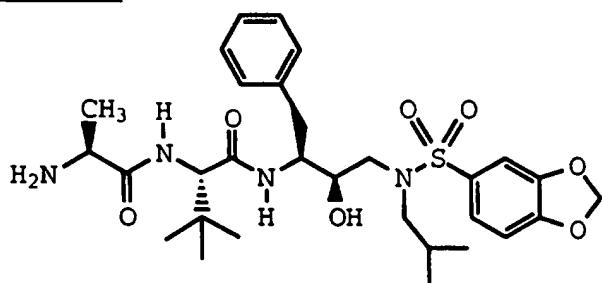
A solution of 3.1 grams (4.3 mmol) of the product from Part A in 10 mL of 1,4-dioxane was charged with 20 mL (40 mmol) of 4N HCl in dioxane solution and stirred for 2 hours. The solvents were removed in vacuo to yield a white solid. The solid was triturated with diethyl ether and isolated by filtration. This solid was triturated with 35% acetonitrile/65% water (both with 1% HCl) and again isolated by filtration. The solid was dried by sequentially adding then removing under reduced pressure three volume of ethanol then three volumes of water. Final drying was done over phosphorous pentaoxide (P₂O₅).

under reduced pressure at room temperature and yielded 1.3 grams (46%) of the desired product as the HCl salt, m/e = 625 (M+Li).

5

EXAMPLE 63

Preparation of 2S-[[2S-aminopropionylamino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl) sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethylbutanamide



Part A: Preparation of 2S-[[2S-[(phenylmethoxycarbonyl)amino]propionyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethylbutanamide

A solution of 1.1 grams (4.9 mmol) of N-CBZ-L-alanine in 5 mL of anhydrous DMF was cooled to 0°C, charged with 0.9 grams (6.4 mmol) of HOBT and 1.0 grams (4.9 mmol) of EDC and stirred for two hours. The reaction was then charged with a solution of 2.3 grams (4.3 mmol) of 2S-amino-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethylbutanamide and 1.3 grams (12.9 mmol) of 4-methylmorpholine in 5 mL of anhydrous DMF and stirred for 18 hours. The solvents were removed in vacuo and the residue was partitioned between 150 mL of ethyl acetate and 50 mL of 5% potassium hydrogen sulfate solution. The layers were separated, and the organic layer was washed with 50 mL each of saturated sodium bicarbonate solution, water and brine, then dried over anhydrous magnesium.

150

sulfate, filtered and concentrated to afford 3.2 grams of crude material. The crude material was crystallized from ethanol, the solid was isolated by filtration, rinsed with one 40 mL portion of hexane, and air-dried to yield
5 3.0 grams (84%) of the desired product, m/e = 745 (M+Li).

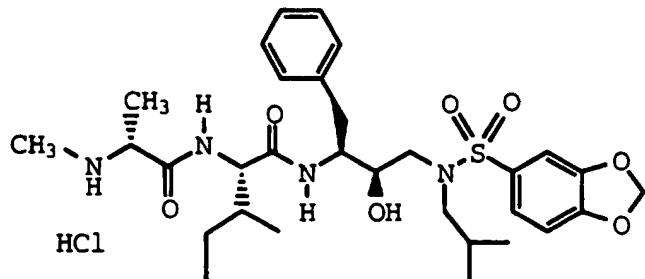
Part B: Preparation of 2S-[(2S-aminopropionyl)amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethylbutanamide

A Fischer-Porter bottle equipped with a magnetic stir bar was charged with 2.9 grams (3.9 mmol) of the product from Part A and 20 mL of tetrahydrofuran (THF). The solution
15 was hydrogenated in the presence of 1.3 grams of 10% palladium-on-carbon catalyst (50% water by weight) under 50 psig of hydrogen for 2 hours at room temperature. The catalyst was removed by filtration, and the solvents removed under reduced pressure. The residue was
20 dissolved in 150 mL of ethyl acetate and washed with 50 mL each of saturated sodium bicarbonate solution and brine, then dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure to afford 2.1 grams of crude material. Purification was
25 accomplished by flash chromatography on silica gel using 2-6% methanol/methylene chloride and yielded 1.9 grams (83%) of the desired product as a white solid, m/e = 605 (M+H).

30

EXAMPLE 64

Preparation of 2S-[(2R-(N-methylamino)propionyl)amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-amino-3S-methylpentanamide·hydrochloride salt



Part A: Preparation of 2S-[{2R-[N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-N-(methyl)amino]propionyl}amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-amino-3S-methylpentanamide

5

A solution of 0.7 grams (3.3 mmol) of N-t-BOC-N-methyl-D-alanine in 5 mL of anhydrous DMF was cooled to 0°C, charged with 0.7 grams (5.0 mmol) of HOBT and 0.7 grams
10 (3.8 mmol) of EDC and stirred for three hours. The reaction solution was then charged with a solution of 1.8 grams (3.3 mmol) of 2S-amino-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methylpentanamide and 1.0 grams
15 (9.9 mmol) of 4-methylmorpholine in 5 mL of anhydrous DMF and stirred for 16 hours. The solvents were removed in vacuo and the residue was partitioned between 150 mL of ethyl acetate and 50 mL of 5% potassium hydrogen sulfate solution. The layers were separated, and the organic layer was washed with 50 mL each of saturated sodium bicarbonate solution, water, and brine, then dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated in vacuo to yield the crude material. Purification was accomplished using flash chromatography on silica gel
20 using 30-50% ethyl acetate/methylene chloride and yielded 1.9 grams (79%) of the desired product as a white solid, m/e = 725 (M+Li).

25

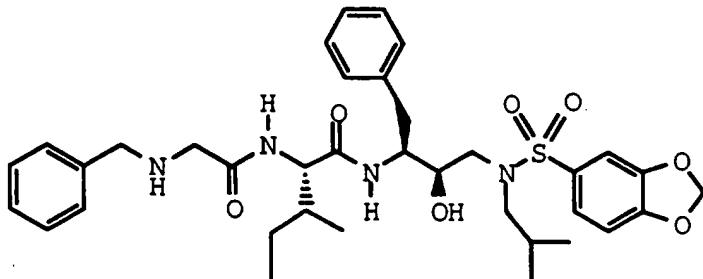
Part B: Preparation of 2S-[{2R-(N-methylamino)propionyl}amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-amino-3S-methylpentanamide hydrochloride salt

30

A solution of 1.9 grams (4.3 mmol) of the product from Part A in 10 mL of 1,4-dioxane was charged with 20 mL (40 mmol) of 4N HCl in dioxane solution and stirred for 2 hours. The solvents were removed in vacuo to yield a white solid. The solid was dried by sequentially adding then removing in vacuo three volumes of ethanol then three volumes of water. Final drying was done over phosphorous pentaoxide (P₂O₅) under reduced pressure at room temperature and yielded 1.5 grams (88%) of the desired product as the HCl salt, m/e = 625 (M+Li).

EXAMPLE 65

15 Preparation of 2S-[[N-(phenylmethyl)aminoacetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methyl pentanamide

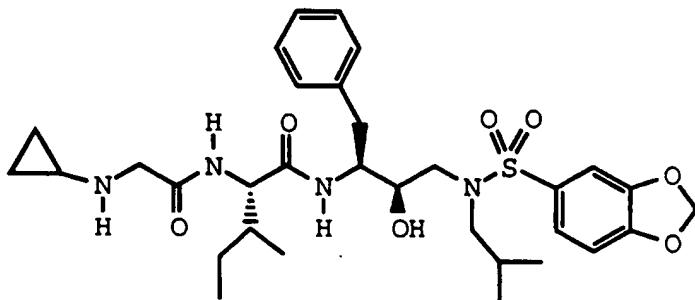


20 A solution of 1.5 grams (2.5 mmol) of 2S-[(chloroacetyl)amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methyl pentanamide in 10 mL of tetrahydrofuran (THF) and 0.5 mL of water was charged with 5.3 grams (49.2 mmol) of benzylamine and stirred for 17 hours. The solvents were removed in vacuo and the residue was partitioned between 150 mL of ethyl acetate and 50 mL of saturated sodium bicarbonate solution, the layers were separated and the organic layer was washed with 50 mL of brine, then dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated in vacuo to afford 2.5 grams of crude

material. Purification was accomplished using flash chromatography on silica gel using 0-6% methanol/methylene chloride and yielded 1.6 grams (96%) of the desired product as a white solid, m/e = 687 (M+Li).

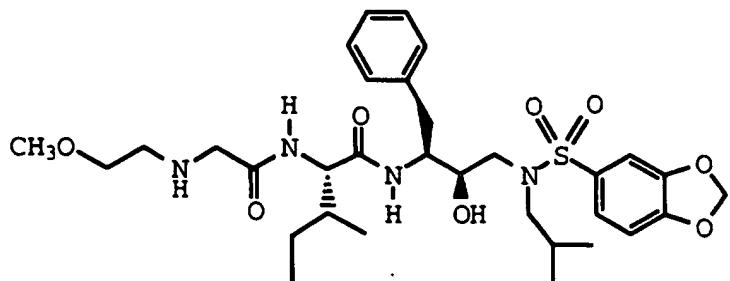
5

EXAMPLE 66



Preparation of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-[[N-cyclopropylamino]acetyl]aminol-3S-methylpentanamide

A solution of 1.5 grams (2.5 mmol) of 2S-
15 [[chloroacetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[[[(1,3-benzodiox-5-
y1)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methylpentanamide in 10 mL of
THF and 0.5 mL of water was charged with 2.8 grams (49.2
mmol) of cyclopropylamine and stirred for 16 hours. The
20 solvents were removed in vacuo and the residue was
partitioned between 150 mL of ethyl acetate and 50 mL of
saturated sodium bicarbonate solution, the layers were
separated and the organic layer was washed with 50 mL of
brine, then dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate,
25 filtered and concentrated in vacuo to afford 1.5 grams of
the desired product as a white solid, m/e = 637 (M+Li),
98% by HPLC.

EXAMPLE 67Preparation of 2S-[N-(2-methoxethyl)aminoacetyl]aminol-

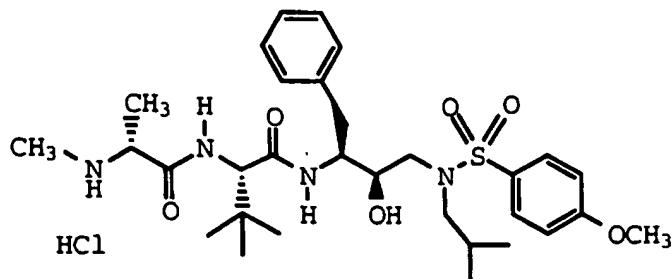
- 5 N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-
methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl-3S-
methylpentanamide

A solution of 1.5 grams (2.5 mmol) of 2S-[[chloroacetyl] 10 amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodiox-5-yl)sulfonyl](2- methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methyl pentanamide in 10 mL of THF and 0.5 mL of water was charged with 3.7 grams (49.2 mmol) of 2-methoxyethylamine and stirred for 18 hours. The solvents were removed in 15 vacuo and the residue was partitioned between 150 mL of ethyl acetate and 50 mL of saturated sodium bicarbonate solution, the layers were separated and the organic layer was washed with 50 mL of brine, then dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated in vacuo to 20 afford 2 grams of crude material. Purification was accomplished using flash chromatography on silica gel using 0-6% methanol/methylene chloride and yielded 1.3 grams (81%) of the desired product as a white solid, m/e = 655 (M+Li).

25

EXAMPLE 68

- Preparation of 2S-[[2R-(N-methylamino)propionyl]aminol-N-
[2R-hydroxy-3-[(4-methoxyphenyl)sulfonyl](2-
methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl-3,3-
dimethylbutanamide·hydrochloride



Part A: Preparation of 2S-[{2R-[N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-N-(methyl)amino]propionyl}amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(4-methoxyphenyl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethylbutanamide

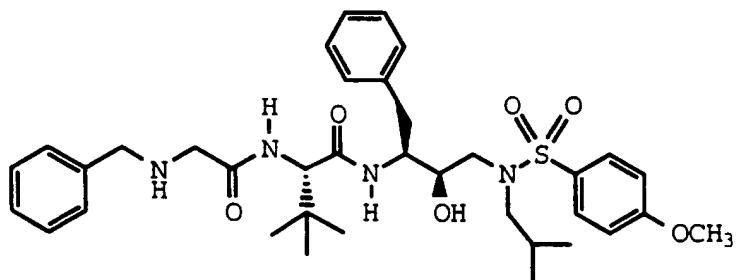
A solution of 0.7 grams (3.3 mmol) of N-t-BOC-N-methyl-D-alanine in 5 mL of anhydrous DMF was cooled to 0°C,
10 charged with 0.7 grams (5.0 mmol) of HOBT and 0.7 grams (3.8 mmol) of EDC and stirred for three hours. The reaction solution was then charged with a solution of 1.7 grams (3.3 mmol) of 2S-amino-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(4-methoxyphenyl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethylbutanamide and 1.0 grams (9.9 mmol) of 4-methylmorpholine in 5 mL of anhydrous DMF and stirred for 18 hours. The solvents were removed in vacuo and the residue was partitioned between 150 mL of ethyl acetate and 50 mL of 5% potassium hydrogen sulfate solution. The layers were separated, and the organic layer was washed with 50 mL each of saturated sodium bicarbonate solution, water, and brine, then dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated in vacuo to yield 2.3 grams (100%) of the
20 desired product as a white solid, m/e = 711 (M+Li).

Part B: Preparation of 2S-[{2R-(N-methylamino)propionyl}amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(4-methoxyphenyl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethylbutanamide•hydrochloride

A solution of 2.3 grams (3.2 mmol) of the product from Part A in 10 mL of 1,4-dioxane was charged with 20 mL (40 mmol) of 4N HCl in dioxane solution and stirred for 2 hours. The solvents were removed in vacuo to yield a 5 white solid. The solid was dried by sequentially adding then removing in vacuo three volumes of ethanol then three volumes of water. Final drying was done over phosphorous pentaoxide (P₂O₅) under reduced pressure at room temperature and yielded 1.9 grams (90%) of the 10 desired product as the HCl salt, m/e = 611 (M+Li).

EXAMPLE 69

Preparation of 2S-[N-(phenylmethyl)aminoacetyl]aminol-N-15 [2R-hydroxy-3-[(4-methoxyphenyl)sulfonyl](2-
methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-
dimethylbutanamide



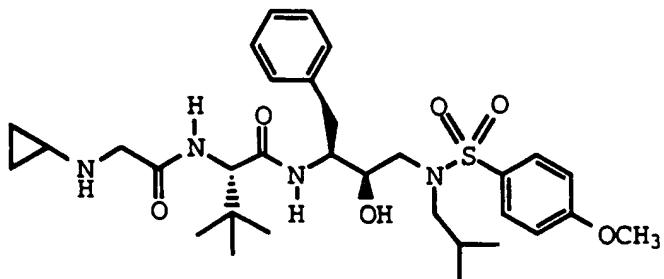
20 Part A: Preparation of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(4-methoxy phenyl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl) propyl]-2S-[(chloroacetyl)amino]-3,3-dimethylbutanamide

A solution of 4.4 grams (8.4 mmol) of 2S-amino-N-[2R-25 hydroxy-3-[(4-methoxybenzene)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl) amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethylbutanamide and 1.3 grams (10.1 mmol) of diisopropylethylamine in 30 mL of anhydrous methylene chloride was cooled in an ice bath and charged with 1.2 grams (7.1 mmol) of 30 chloroacetic anhydride and stirred for one-half hour. HPLC analysis at this time showed the reaction to be 83% complete. The solution was charged with an additional

0.2 gram (1.2 mmol) of chloroacetic anhydride and stirred for 15 hours. The solvents were removed in vacuo and the residue was partitioned between 300 mL of ethyl acetate and 100 mL of 5% citric acid solution, the layers were
5 separated and the organic layer was washed with 100 mL each of saturated sodium bicarbonate solution, water and brine, then dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated to afford 5.1 grams of crude material. Purification was accomplished using flash
10 chromatography on silica gel using 30-50% ethyl acetate/hexane and yielded 4.1 grams (82%) of the desired product as a white solid, m/e = 602 (M+Li).

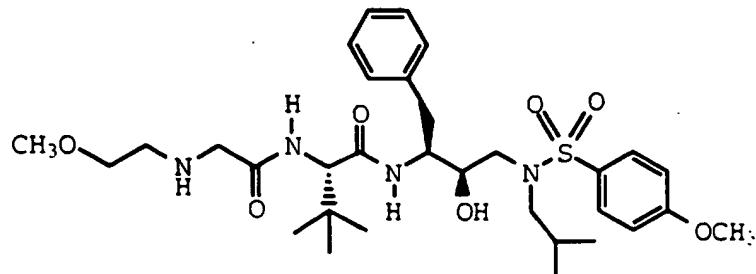
Part B: Preparation of 2S-[[N-(phenylmethyl)aminoacetyl] amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(4-methoxyphenyl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethylbutanamide
15

A solution of 1.3 grams (2.2 mmol) of the product from Part A in 12 mL of THF and 0.5 mL of water was charged with 4.8 grams (44.6 mmol) of benzylamine and stirred for 16 hours. The solvents were removed in vacuo and the residue was partitioned between 150 mL of ethyl acetate and 50 mL of saturated sodium bicarbonate solution, the
20 layers were separated and the organic layer was washed with 50 mL of brine, then dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated to yield the crude material as an oil. Purification was accomplished using flash chromatography on silica gel using 0-4% methanol/
25 methylene chloride and yielded 1.3 grams (87%) of the desired product as a white solid, m/e = 673 (M+Li).
30

EXAMPLE 70

Preparation of 2S-[[(N-cyclopropylamino)acetyl]amino]-2R-hydroxy-3-[(4-methoxyphenyl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)aminol-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl-3,3-dimethylbutanamide

A solution of 1.3 grams (2.2 mmol) of 2S-[[chloroacetyl]amino-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(4-methoxybenzene)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethylbutanamide in 12 mL of THF and 0.5 mL of water was charged with 2.6 grams (44.6 mmol) of cyclopropylamine and stirred for 18 hours. The solvents were removed in vacuo and the residue was partitioned between 150 mL of ethyl acetate and 50 mL of saturated sodium bicarbonate solution, the layers were separated and the organic layer was washed with 50 mL of brine, then dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated in vacuo to yield 1.3 grams (93%) of the desired product as a white solid, m/e = 623 (M+Li).

EXAMPLE 71

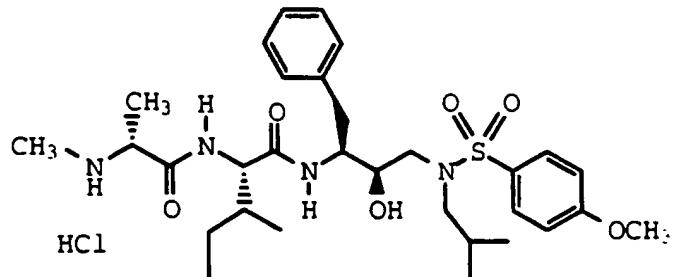
Preparation of 2S-[N-(2-methoxethyl)aminoacetyl]aminol-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(4-methoxyphenyl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl-3,3-dimethylbutanamide

5

A solution of 1.3 grams (2.2 mmol) of 2S-[[chloroacetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(4-methoxybenzene)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethylbutanamide in 12 mL of THF and 0.5 mL of water was charged with 3.4 grams (44.6 mmol) of 2-methoxyethylamine and stirred for 17 hours. The solvents were removed in vacuo and the residue was partitioned between 150 mL of ethyl acetate and 50 mL of saturated sodium bicarbonate solution, the layers were separated and the organic layer was washed with 50 mL of brine, then dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated in vacuo to yield the crude material. Purification was accomplished using flash chromatography on silica gel using 0-6% methanol/methylene chloride and yielded 1.1 grams (77%) of the desired product as a white solid, m/e = 641 (M+Li).

EXAMPLE 72

25 Preparation of 2S-[2R-(N-methylamino)propionyl]aminol-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(4-methoxyphenyl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl-2S-amino-3S-methylpentanamide·hydrochloride salt



30

Part A: Preparation of 2S-[2R-[N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-N-(methyl)amino]propionyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(4-

(methoxyphenyl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-amino-3S-methylpentanamide

A solution of 0.7 grams (3.3 mmol) of N-t-BOC-N-methyl-D-
5 alanine in 5 mL of anhydrous DMF was cooled to 0°C,
charged with 0.7 grams (5.0 mmol) of HOBT and 0.7 grams
(3.8 mmol) of EDC and stirred for three hours. The
reaction solution was then charged with a solution of 1.7
grams (3.3 mmol) of 2S-amino-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(4-
10 methoxyphenyl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methylpentanamide and 1.0 grams
(9.9mmol) of 4-methylmorpholine in 5 mL of anhydrous DMF
and stirred for 16 hours. The solvents were removed in
vacuo and the residue was partitioned between 150 mL of
15 ethyl acetate and 50 mL of 5% potassium hydrogen sulfate
solution. The layers were separated, and the organic
layer was washed with 50 mL each of saturated sodium
bicarbonate solution, water, and brine, then dried over
anhydrous magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated in
vacuo to yield the crude material. Purification was
20 accomplished using flash chromatography on silica gel
using 30-50% ethyl acetate/hexane and yielded 1.6 grams
(70%) of the desired product as a white solid, m/e = 711
(M+Li).

25

Part B: Preparation of Preparation of 2S-[[2R-(N-methylamino)propionyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(4-methoxyphenyl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-2S-amino-3S-methylpentanamide•hydrochloride salt

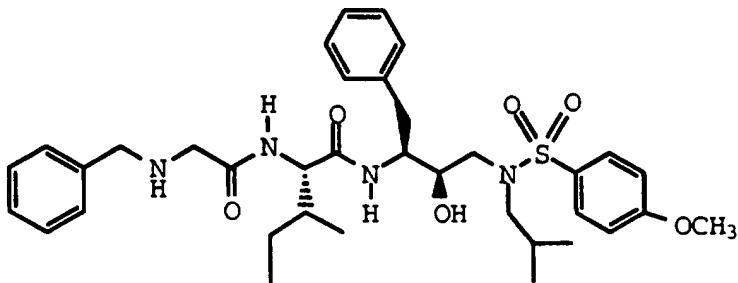
A solution of 1.6 grams (2.2 mmol) of the product from
Part A in 10 mL of 1,4-dioxane was charged with 20 mL (40
mmol) of 4N HCl in dioxane solution and stirred for 2
35 hours. The solvents were removed in vacuo to yield a
white solid. The solid was dried by sequentially adding
then removing under reduced pressure three volumes of

ethanol then three volumes of water. Final drying was done over phosphorous pentaoxide (P_2O_5) under reduced pressure at room temperature and yielded 1.2 grams (86%) of the desired product as the HCl salt, m/e = 611 (M+Li).

5

EXAMPLE 73

10 Preparation of 2S-[N-(phenylmethyl)aminoacetyl]aminol-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(4-methoxyphenyl)sulfonyl](2-
methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl-3S-methyl
pentanamide



15 Part A: Preparation of 2S-[(chloroacetyl)amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(4-methoxyphenyl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methylpentanamide

A solution of 5.5 grams (10.6 mmol) of 2S-amino-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(4-methoxybenzene)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methylpentanamide and 1.6 grams (12.7 mmol) of diisopropylethylamine in 30 mL of anhydrous methylene chloride was cooled in an ice bath and charged with 1.5 grams (9.0 mmol) of chloroacetic anhydride and stirred 20 for one-half hour. HPLC analysis at this time showed the reaction to be 82% complete. The solution was charged with an additional 0.3 gram (1.8 mmol) of chloroacetic anhydride and stirred for 16 hours. The solvents were removed in vacuo and the residue was partitioned between 25 300 mL of ethyl acetate and 100 mL of 5% citric acid solution, the layers were separated and the organic layer was washed with 100 mL each of saturated sodium

bicarbonate solution, water and brine, then dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated in vacuo to afford 6.2 grams of the desired product as a white solid, m/e = 602 (M+Li).

5

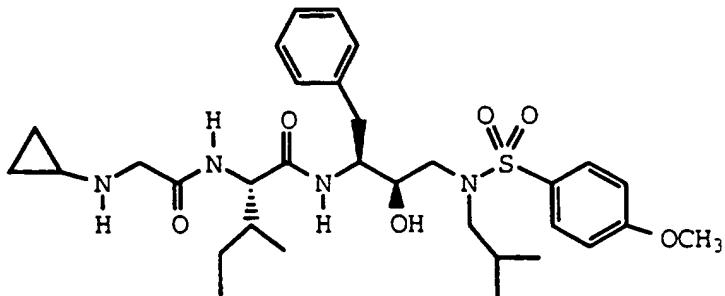
Part B: Preparation of 2S-[[N-(phenylmethyl)aminoacetyl] amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(4-methoxyphenyl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methyl pentanamide

10

A solution of 2.0 grams (3.4 mmol) of the chloroacetyl product from Part A in 12 mL of THF and 0.5 mL of water was charged with 7.2 grams (67.1 mmol) of benzylamine and stirred for 64 hours. The solvents were removed in vacuo and the residue was partitioned between 150 mL of ethyl acetate and 50 mL of saturated sodium bicarbonate solution, the layers were separated and the organic layer was washed with 50 mL each of water and brine, then dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated in vacuo to yield the crude material as an oil. Purification was accomplished using flash chromatography on silica gel using 0-4% methanol/methylene chloride and yielded 1.8 grams (80%) of the desired product as a white solid, m/e = 673 (M+Li).

15

EXAMPLE 74

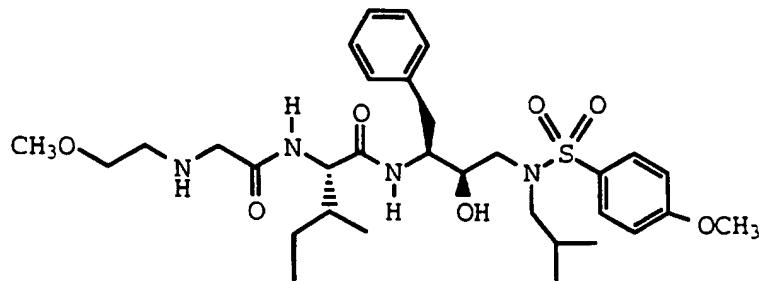


Preparation of N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(4-methoxyphenyl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-[(N-cyclopropylamino)acetyl]aminol-3S-methyl pentanamide

A solution of 2.0 grams (3.4 mmol) of 2S-[(chloroacetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(4-methoxybenzene)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-5 methylpentanamide in 12 mL of THF and 0.5 mL of water. The solution was charged with 3.8 grams (67.1 mmol) of cyclopropylamine and stirred for 64 hours. The solvents were removed in vacuo and the residue was partitioned between 150 mL of ethyl acetate and 50 mL of saturated sodium bicarbonate solution, the layers were separated and the organic layer was washed with 50 mL each of water and brine, then dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated in vacuo to yield the crude material as a white solid. Purification was accomplished 10 using flash chromatography on silica gel using 1-4% methanol/methylene chloride and yielded 1.8 grams (81%) 15 of the desired product as a white solid, m/e =623 (M+Li).

EXAMPLE 75

20



Preparation of 2S-[(N-(2-methoxethyl)aminoacetyllaminol-

N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(4-methoxyphenyl)sulfonyl](2-

methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-

25 methylpentanamide

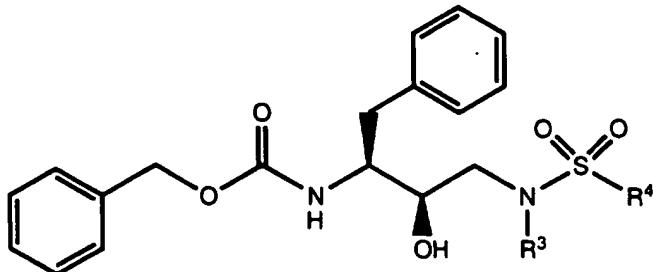
A solution of 2.0 grams (3.4 mmol) of 2S-[(chloroacetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(4-methoxybenzene)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-30 methylpentanamide in 12 mL of THF and 0.5 mL of water was charged with 5.0 grams (67.1 mmol) of 2-methoxyethylamine and stirred for 64 hours. The solvents were removed in

vacuo and the residue was partitioned between 150 mL of ethyl acetate and 50 mL of saturated sodium bicarbonate solution, the layers were separated and the organic layer was washed with 50 mL each of water and brine, then dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated in vacuo to yield the crude material. Purification was accomplished using flash chromatography on silica gel using 0-6% methanol/methylene chloride and yielded 1.6 grams (76%) of the desired product as a white solid, m/e = 641 (M+Li).

EXAMPLE 76

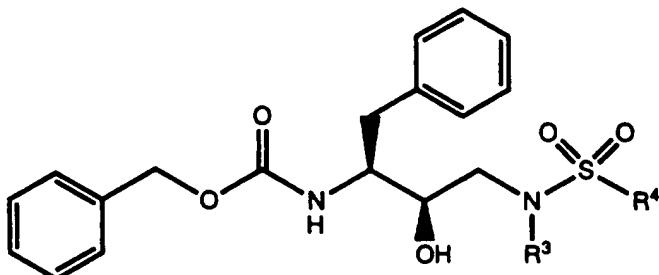
Following the procedures of the previous Examples, the compounds set forth in Tables 2 through 15 can be prepared.

TABLE 2

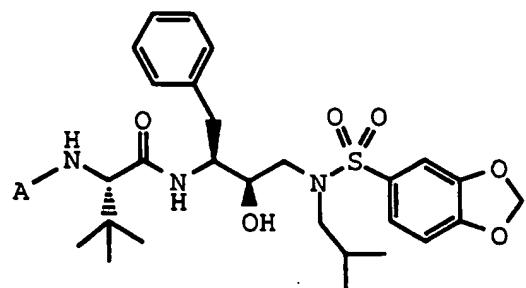


20

Entry	R ³	R ⁴
1	isobutyl	2-methyl-1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl
2	isobutyl	2-methyl-1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl
3	cyclopentylmethyl	2-methyl-1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl
25	4 cyclohexylmethyl	2-methyl-1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl
5	cyclopentylmethyl	1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl
6	cyclohexylmethyl	1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl
7	cyclopentylmethyl	benzofuran-5-yl
8	cyclohexylmethyl	benzofuran-5-yl
30	9 cyclopentylmethyl	2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl
10	cyclohexylmethyl	2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl
11	isobutyl	1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl

TABLE 2 cont.

5	<u>Entry</u>	<u>R³</u>	<u>R⁴</u>
	12	isobutyl	benzofuran-5-yl
	13	isobutyl	2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl
	14	isobutyl	1,4-benzodioxan-6-yl
10	15	isoamyl	1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl
	16	isoamyl	2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl
	17	isoamyl	1,4-benzodioxan-6-yl
	18	isobutyl	benzothiazol-6-yl
	19	isobutyl	2-amino-benzothiazol-6-yl
15	20	isobutyl	benzoxazol-5-yl
	21	cyclopentylmethyl	2,2-difluoro-1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl
	22	cyclohexylmethyl	2,2-difluoro-1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl

TABLE 3A

5

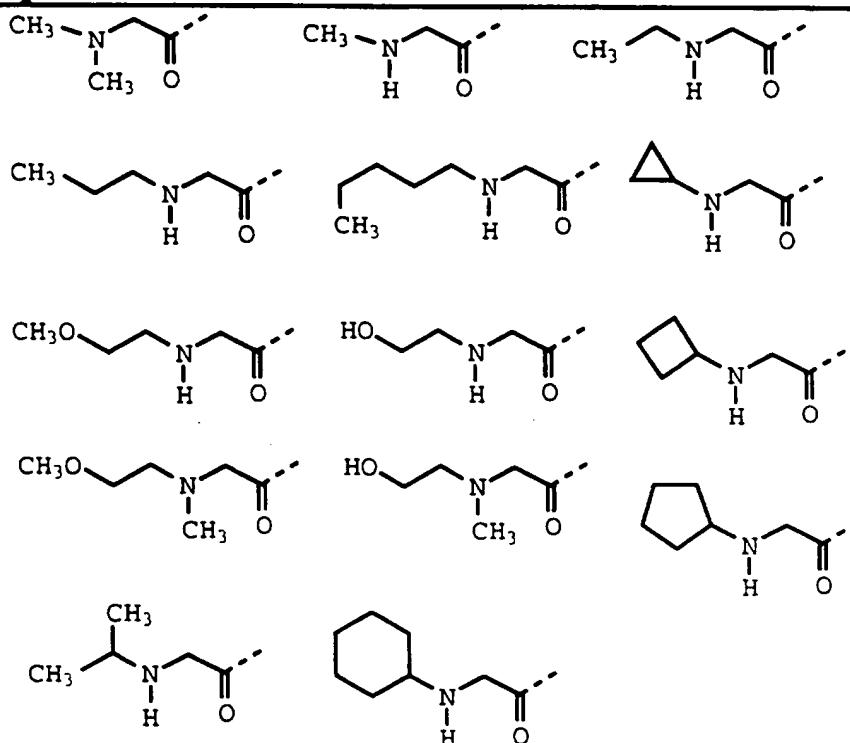
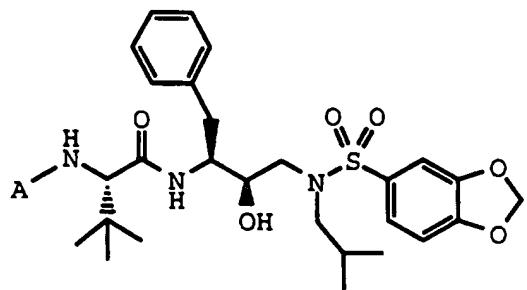
Entry**A**

TABLE 3B

5

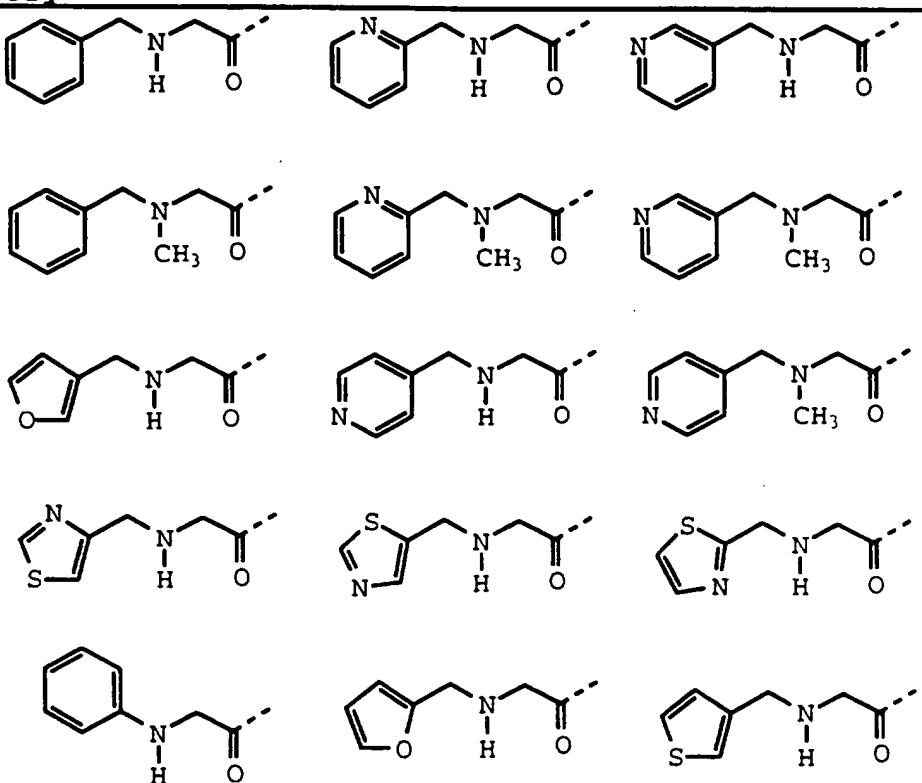
Entry**A**

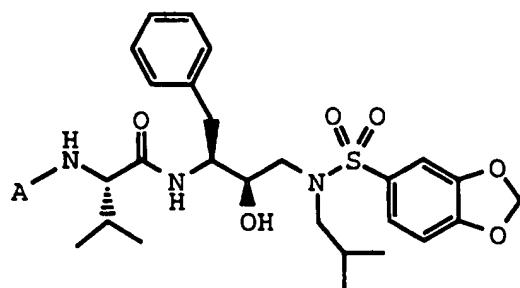
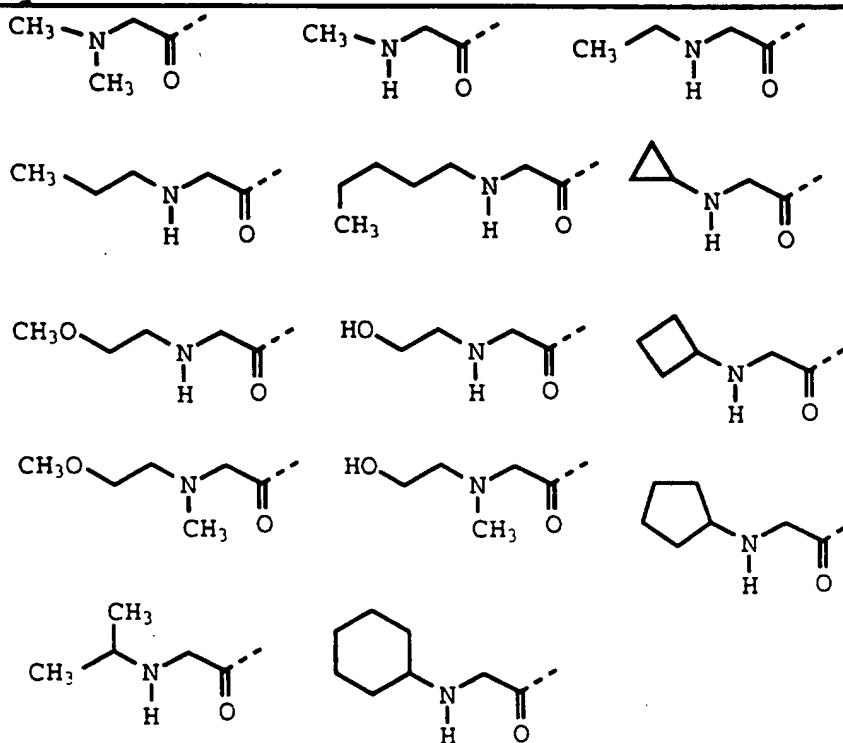
TABLE 3C5 EntryA

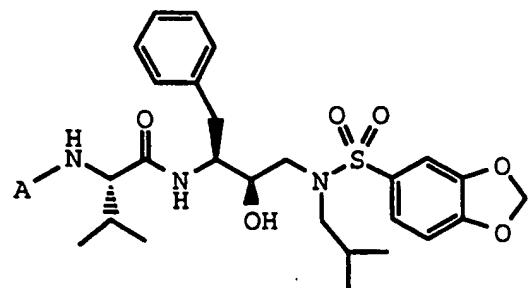
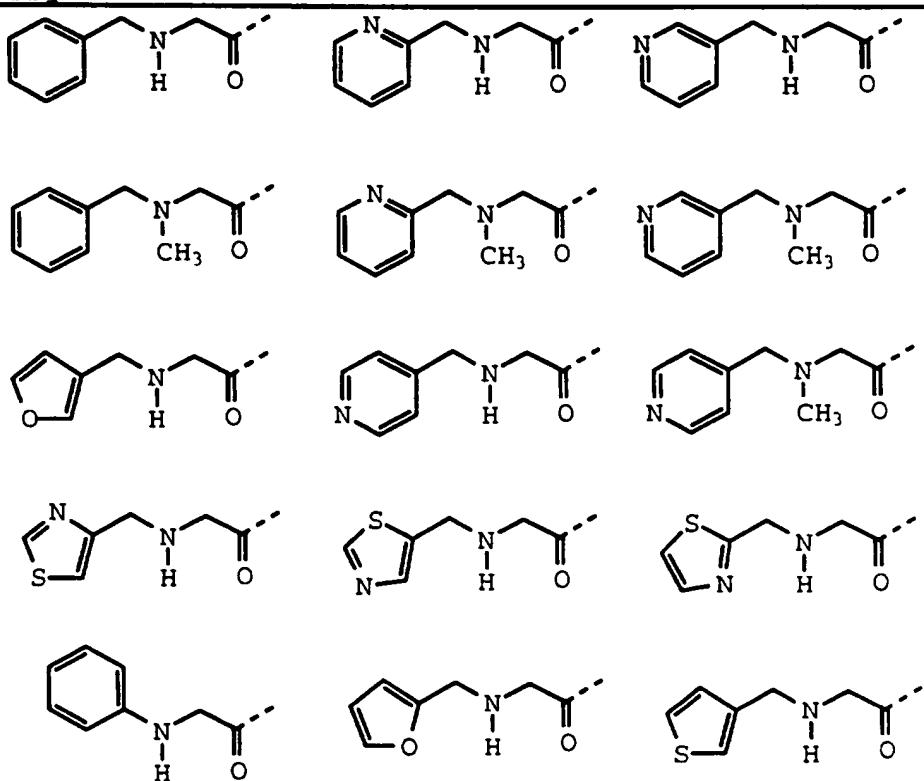
TABLE 3D5 **Entry****A**

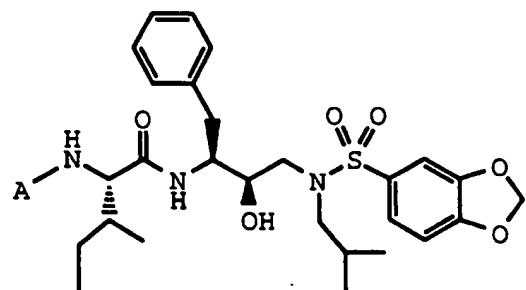
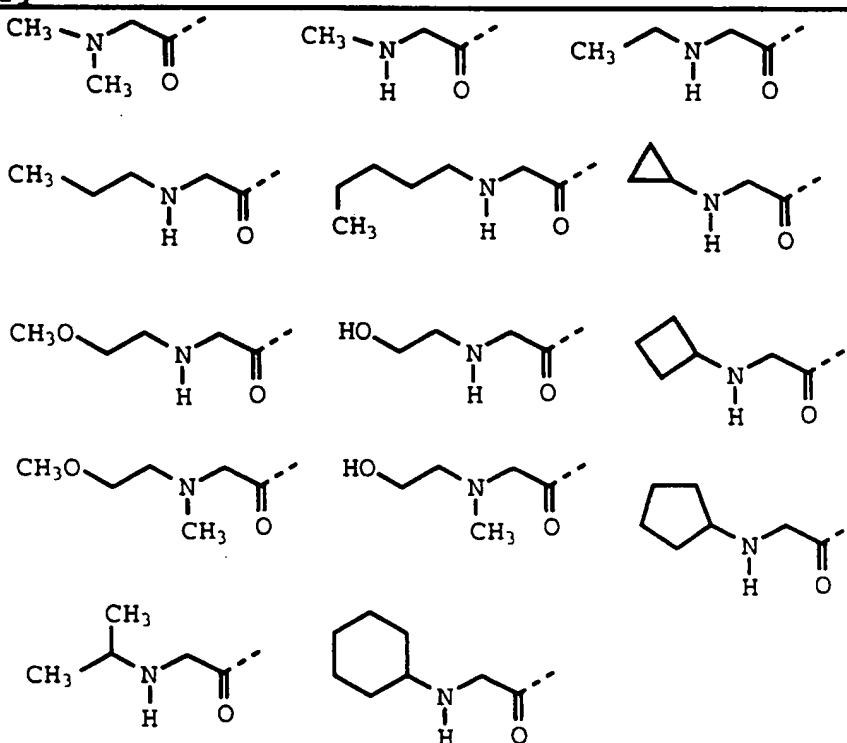
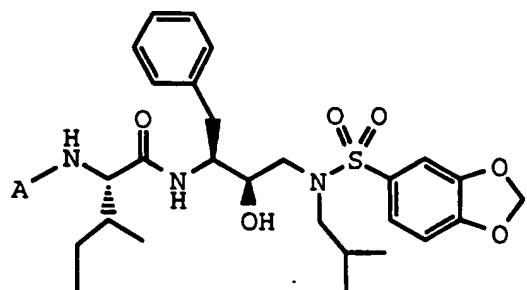
TABLE 3E5 **Entry****A**

TABLE 3F

5

<u>Entry</u>	<u>A</u>

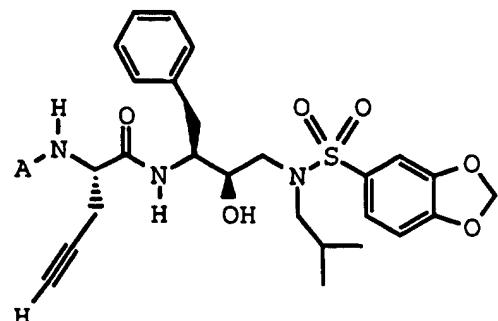
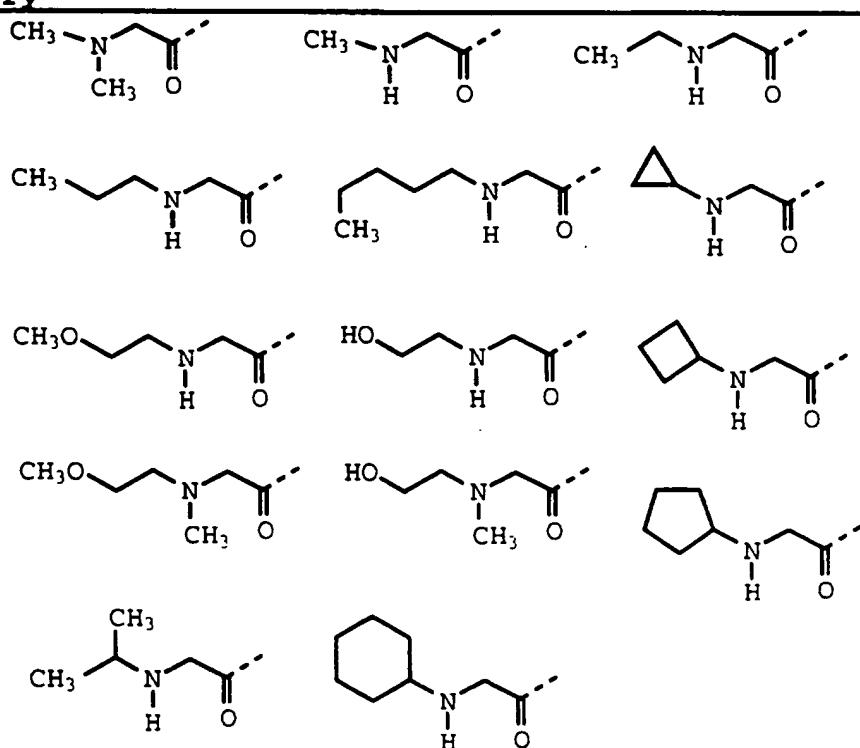
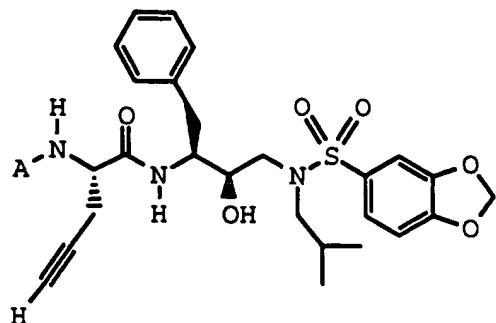
TABLE 3G5 EntryA

TABLE 3H

5	<u>Entry</u>	A

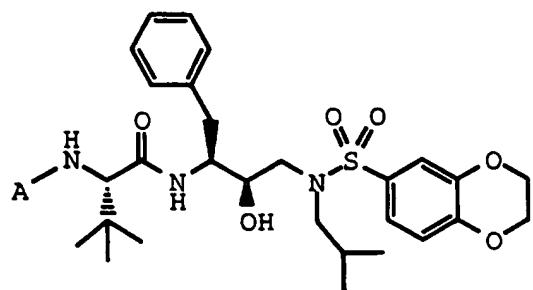
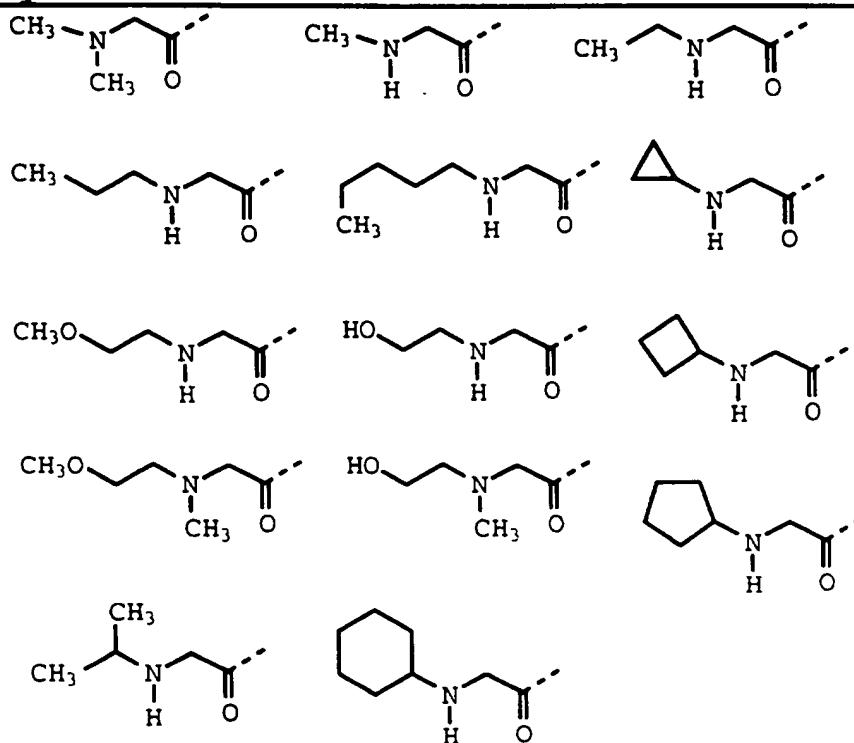
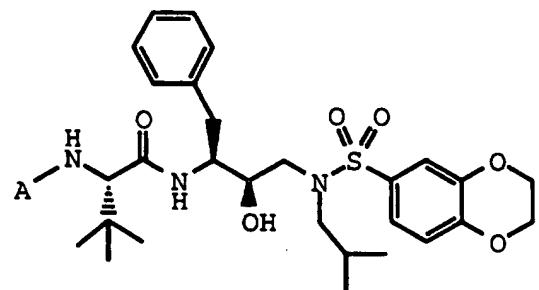
TABLE 4A5 **Entry****A**

TABLE 4B

5	Entry	A

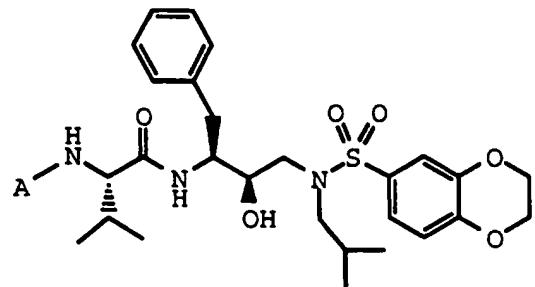
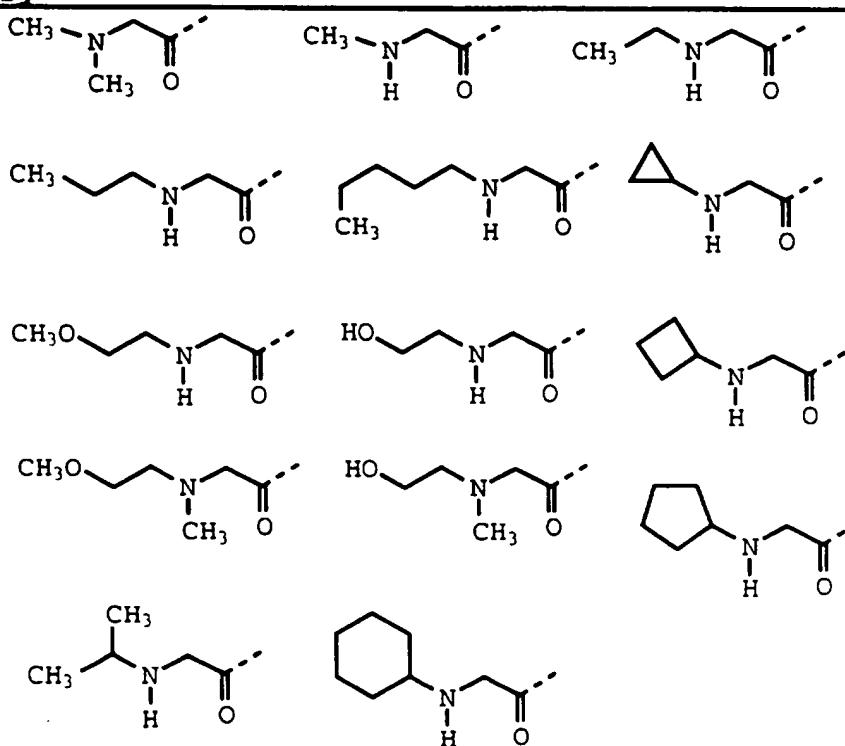
TABLE 4C5 Entry**A**

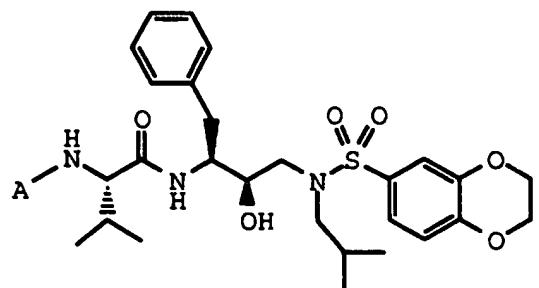
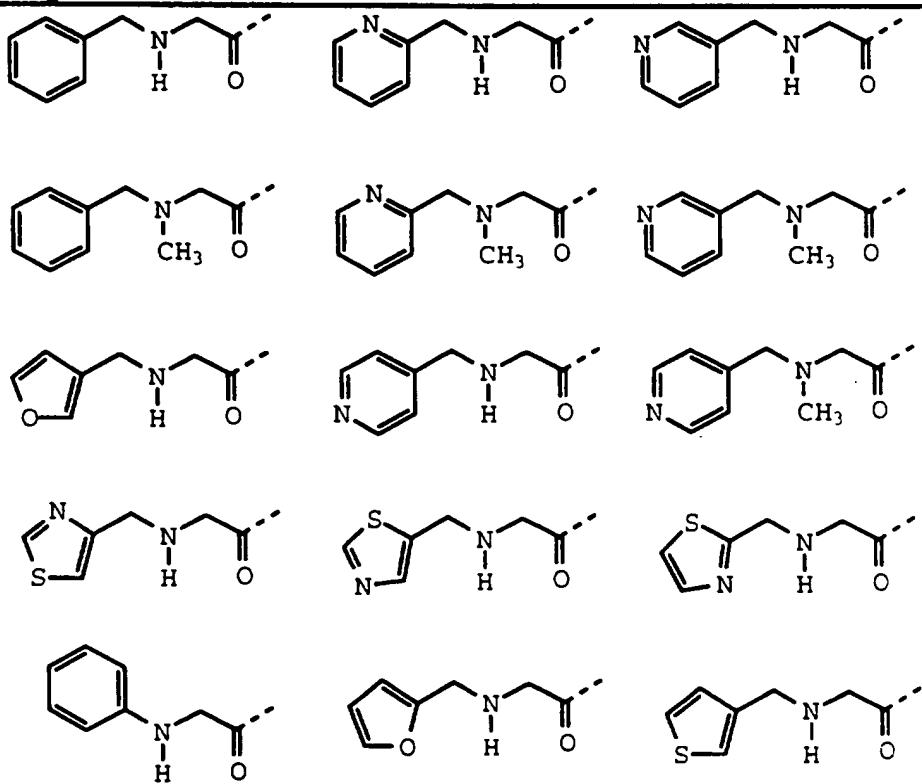
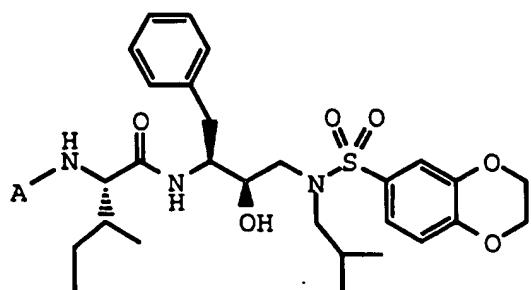
TABLE 4D5 **Entry****A**

TABLE 4E

5

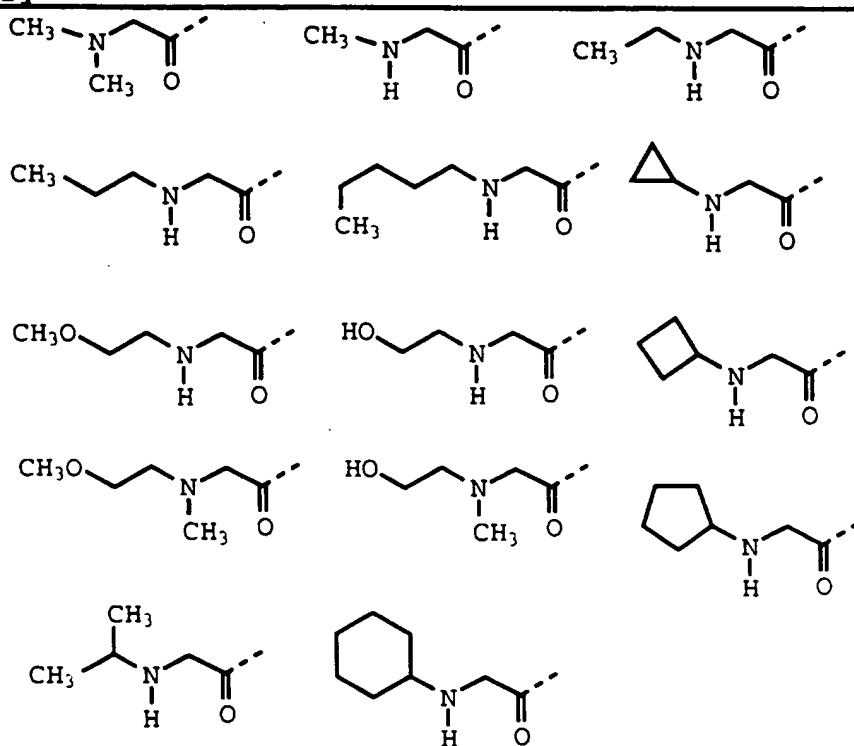
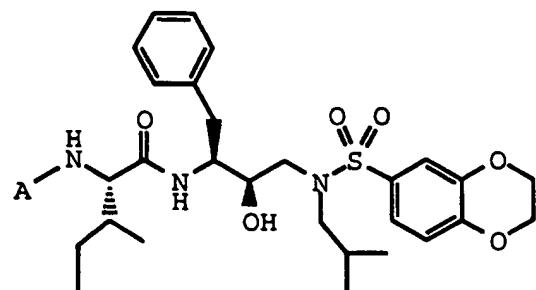
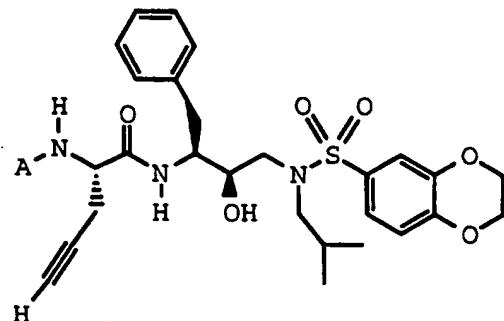
Entry**A**

TABLE 4F

5	<u>Entry</u>	<u>A</u>

180

TABLE 4G

5

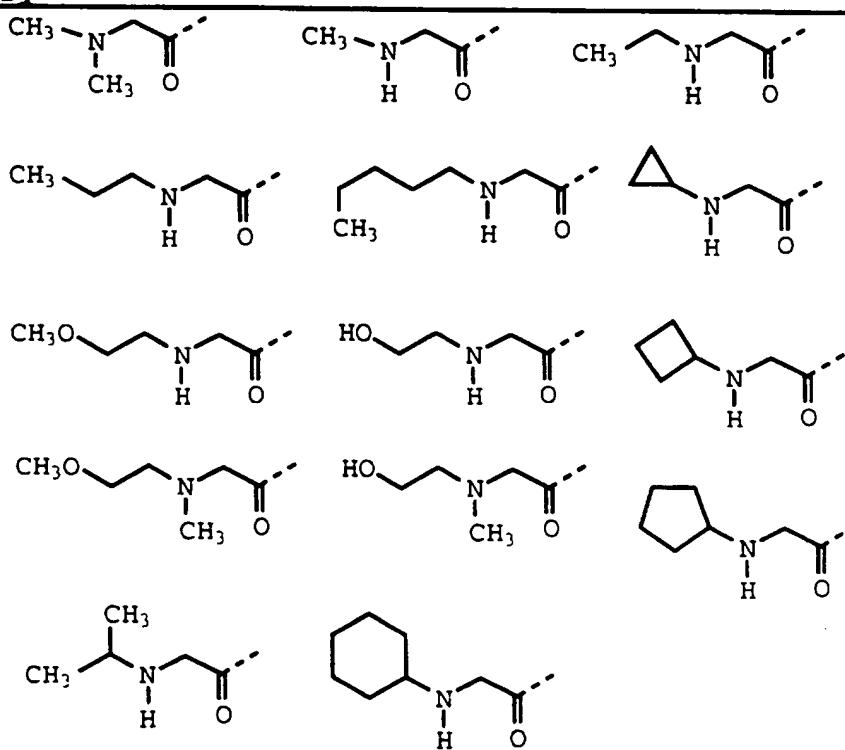
EntryA

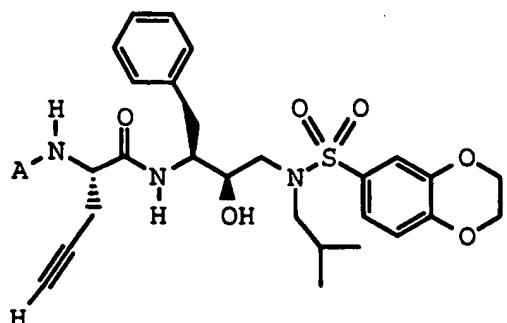
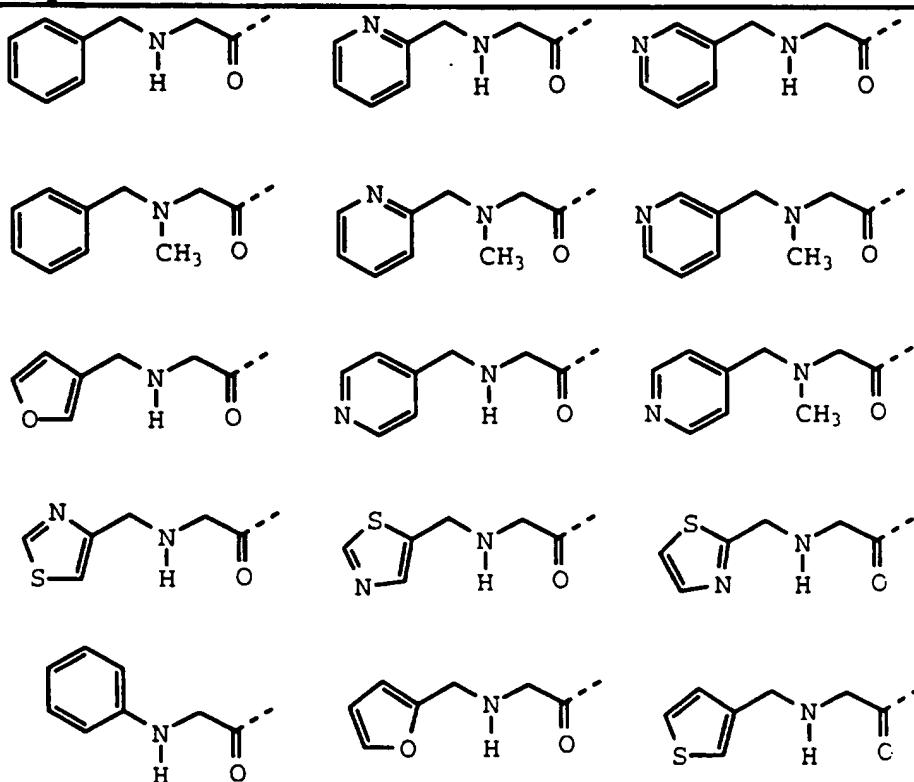
TABLE 4H5 Entry**A**

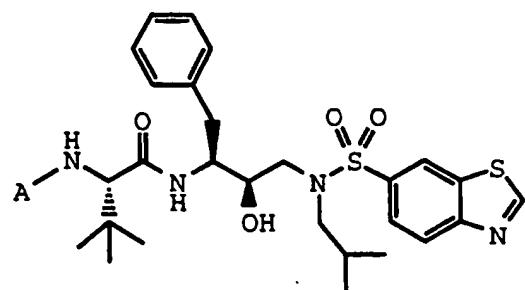
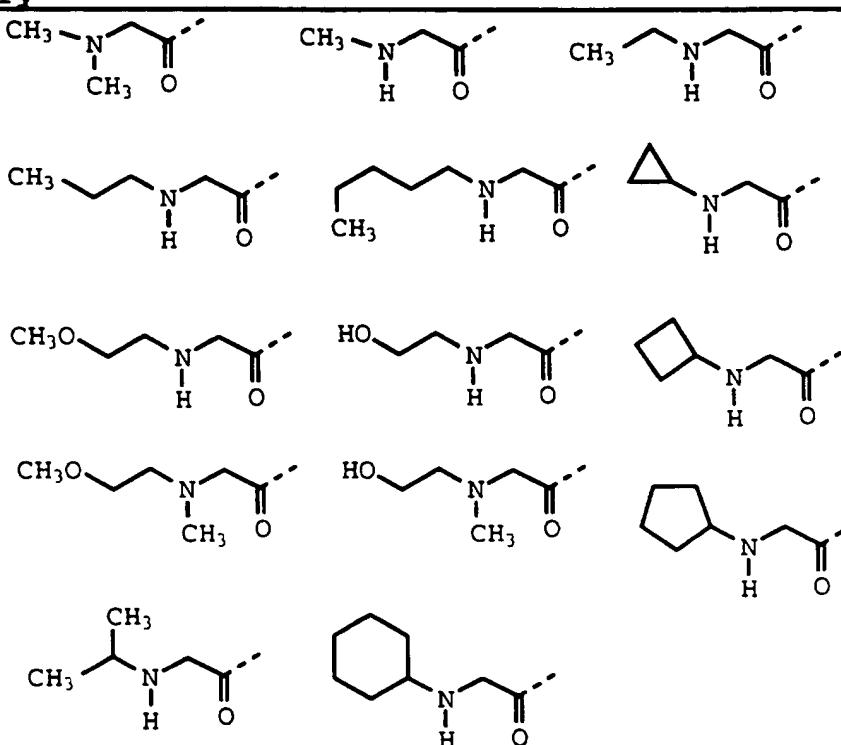
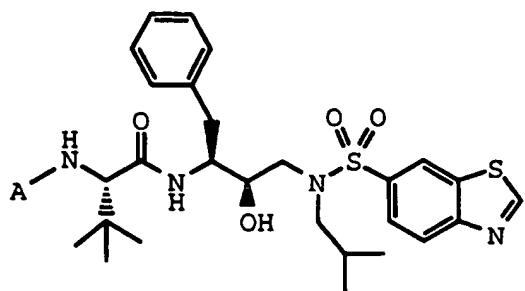
TABLE 5A5 **Entry****A**

TABLE 5B

5

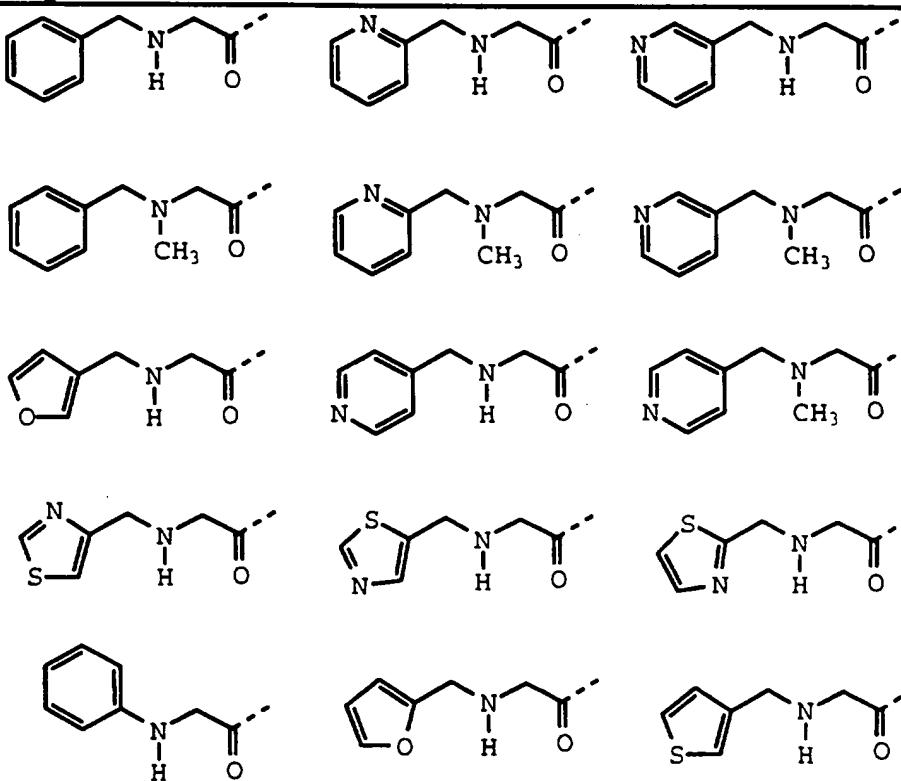
Entry**A**

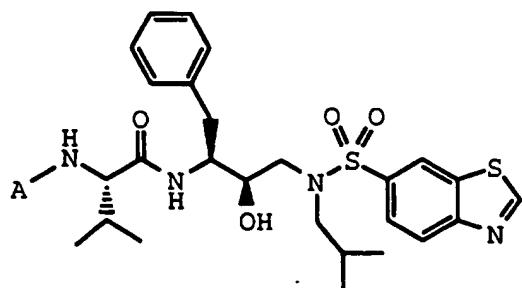
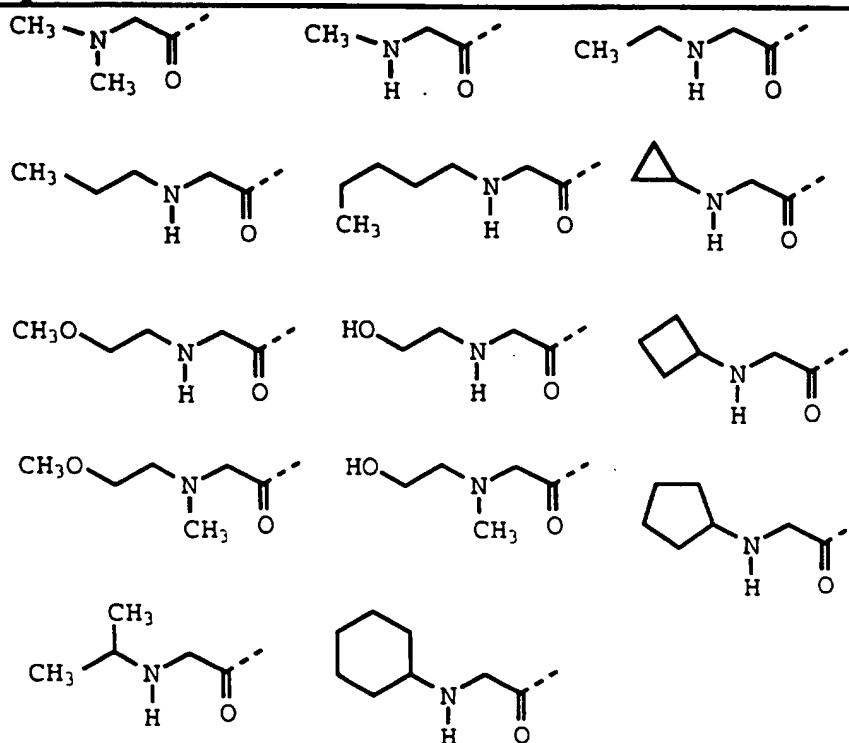
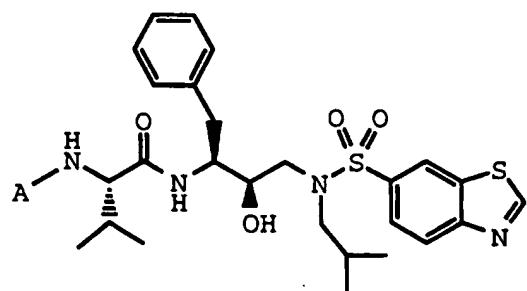
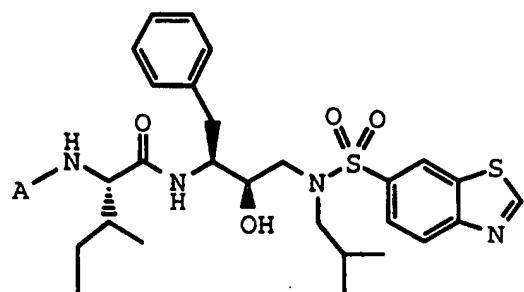
TABLE 5C5 Entry**A**

TABLE 5D

5	<u>Entry</u>	A

TABLE 5E



Entry

A

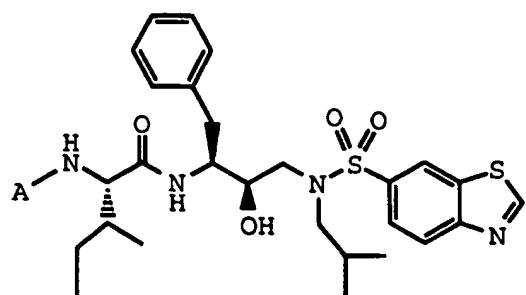
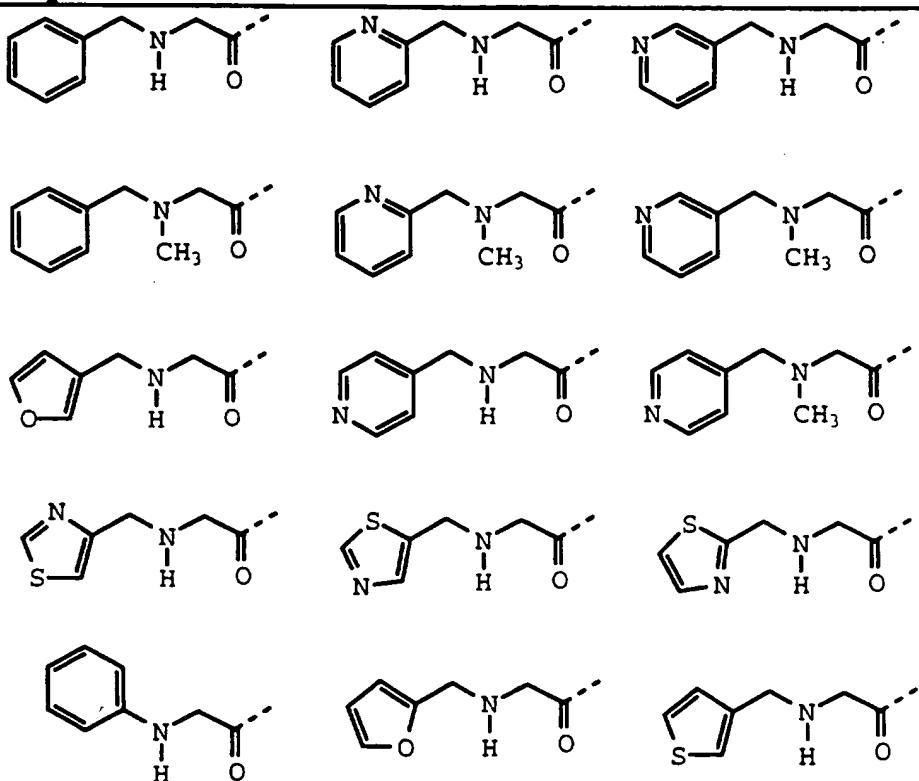
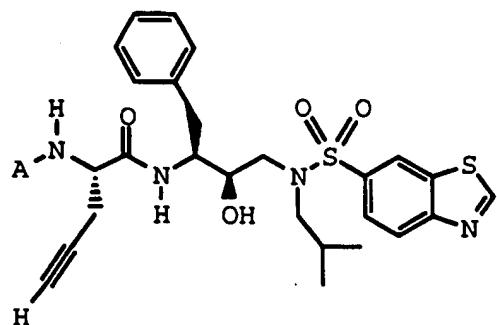
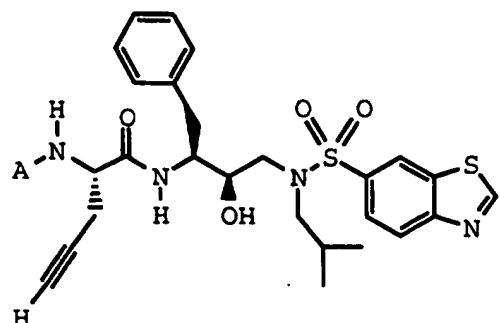
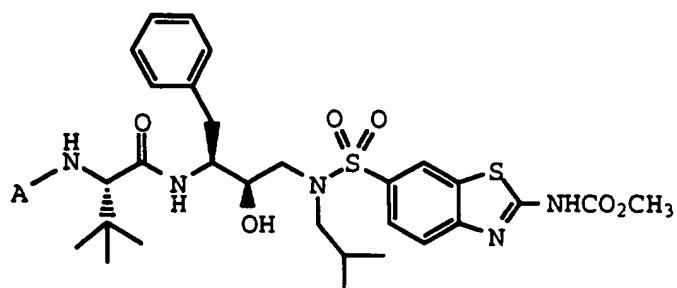
TABLE 5F5 **Entry****A**

TABLE 5G

5	<u>Entry</u>	A
	<chem>CC(C)NCC(=O)C</chem>	<chem>CC(C)NCC(=O)C</chem>
	<chem>CCNCC(=O)C</chem>	<chem>CCNCC(=O)C</chem>
	<chem>CCCCNCC(=O)C</chem>	<chem>C1CCNCC(=O)C1</chem>
	<chem>CCOCNCC(=O)C</chem>	<chem>C1CCCNC(=O)C1</chem>
	<chem>CCOCNCC(=O)C</chem>	<chem>CCN(C1CCCC1)CC(=O)C</chem>
	<chem>CC(C)NCC(=O)C</chem>	<chem>CC1CCCC1NCC(=O)C</chem>

TABLE 5H

5	Entry	A

TABLE 6A

5

Entry	A

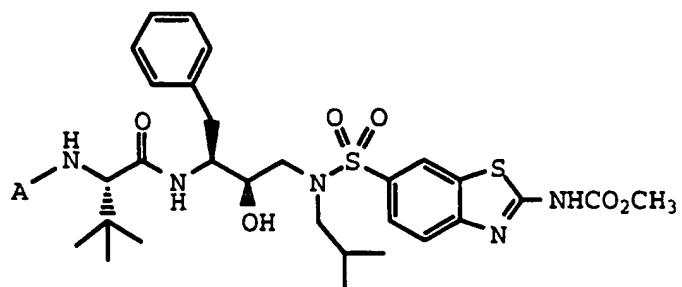
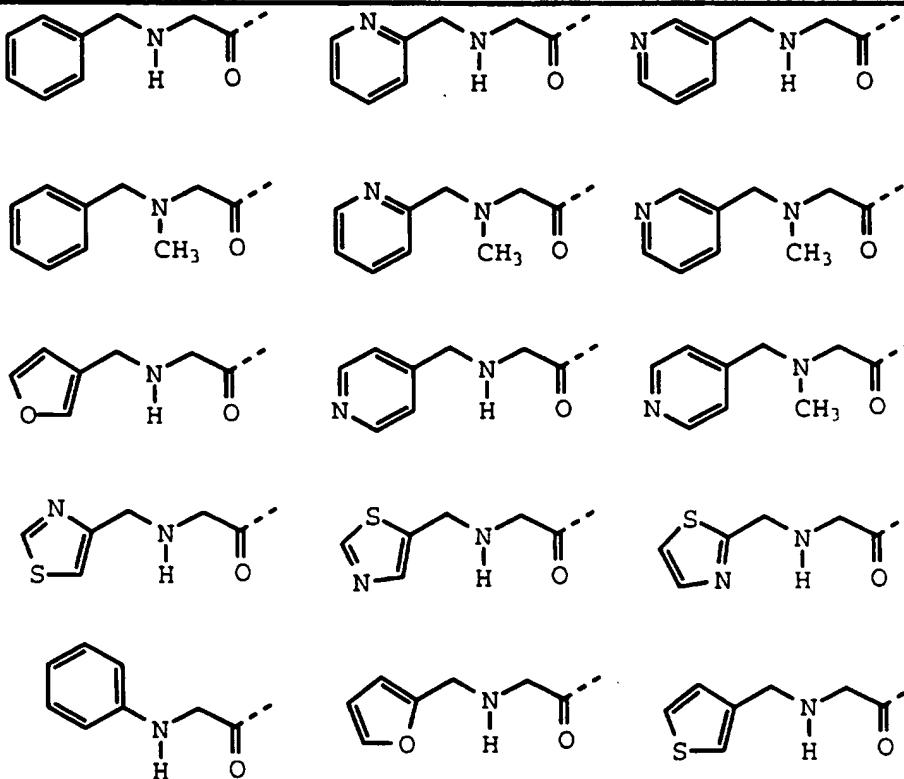
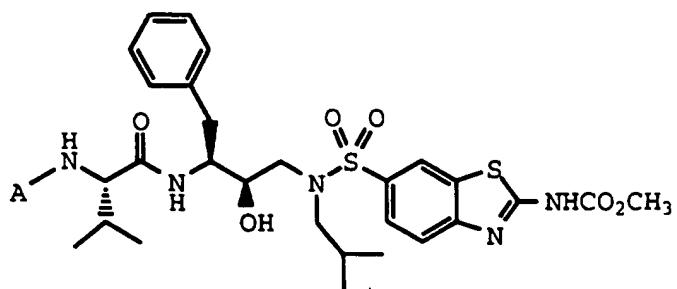
TABLE 6B5 Entry**A**

TABLE 6C



A

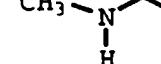
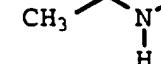
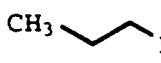
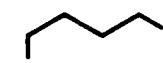
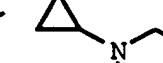
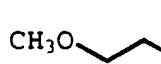
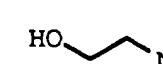
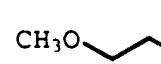
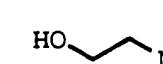
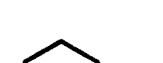
Entry	5	
		
		
		
		
		

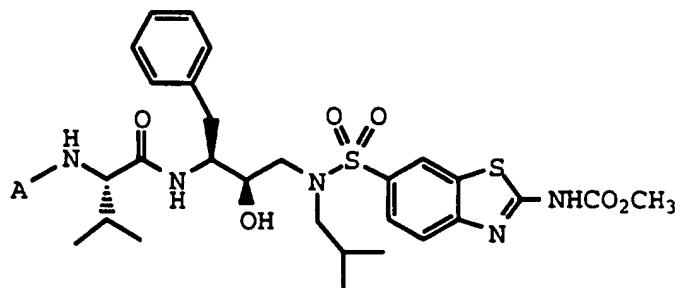
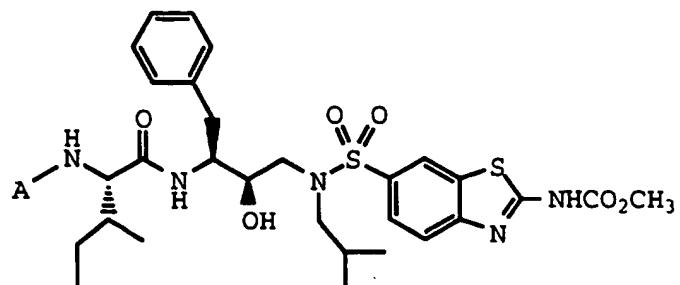
TABLE 6D5 **Entry****A**

TABLE 6E

5	Entry	A
	<chem>CCN(C)C=O</chem>	<chem>CCNHC(=O)C</chem>
	<chem>CCNCC(=O)C</chem>	<chem>CCCNHC(=O)C</chem>
	<chem>CCCCNHC(=O)C</chem>	<chem>C1CCNHC(=O)C1</chem>
	<chem>CCOCNHC(=O)C</chem>	<chem>C1CCCNC(=O)C1</chem>
	<chem>CCN(C)C(=O)C</chem>	<chem>CCN(CC)C(=O)C</chem>
	<chem>CCNCC(=O)C</chem>	<chem>CCN(CC)C(=O)C</chem>
	<chem>CCNCC1CCCCC1</chem>	<chem>CCN(CC1CCCCC1)C(=O)C</chem>

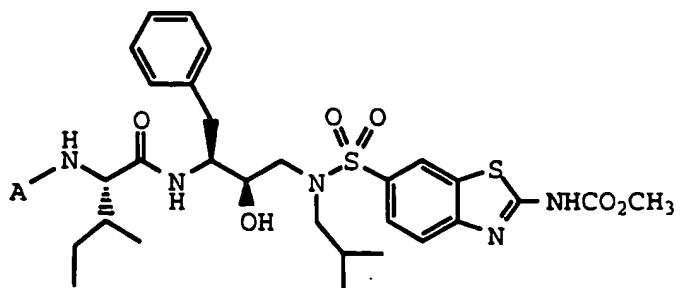
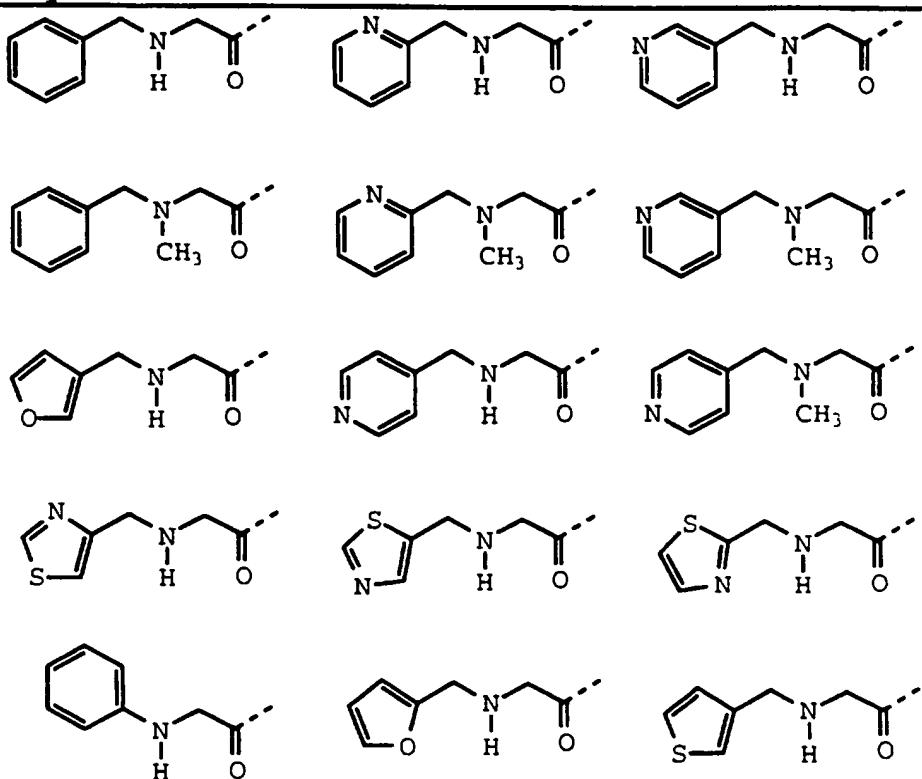
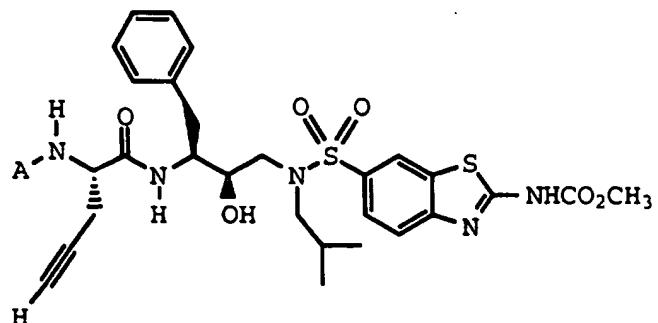
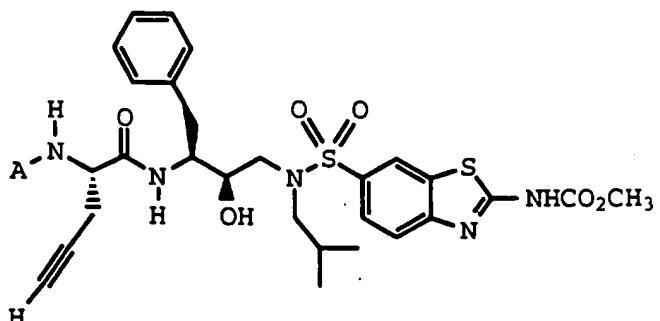
TABLE 6F5 **Entry****A**

TABLE 6G



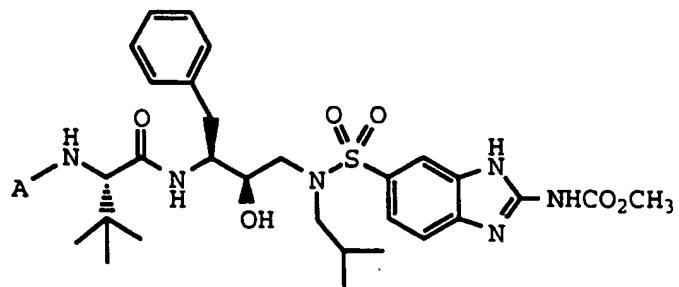
5 **Entry** **A**

<chem>CCN(C)C(=O)C</chem>	<chem>CCN(C)C(=O)CN</chem>	<chem>CCN(C)C(=O)CNCC</chem>
<chem>CCCCN(C)C(=O)C</chem>	<chem>CCCCN(C)C(=O)CN</chem>	<chem>C1CCN(C)C(=O)CN1</chem>
<chem>CCOCN(C)C(=O)C</chem>	<chem>CCOCCN(C)C(=O)C</chem>	<chem>C1CCCCN(C)C(=O)C1</chem>
<chem>CCOCN(C)C(=O)CN</chem>	<chem>CCOCCN(C)C(=O)CN</chem>	<chem>C1CCCCN(C)C(=O)C1</chem>
<chem>CC(C)N(C)C(=O)C</chem>	<chem>C1CCCCN(C)C(=O)C1</chem>	

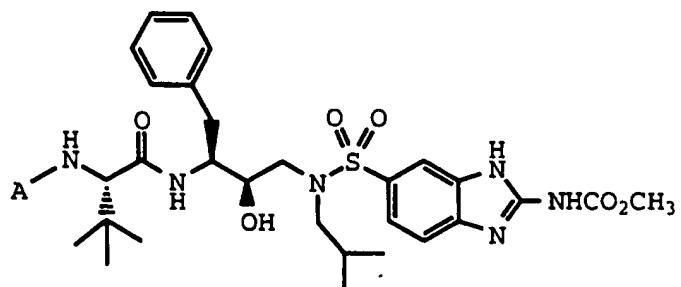
TABLE 6H

5

Entry**A**

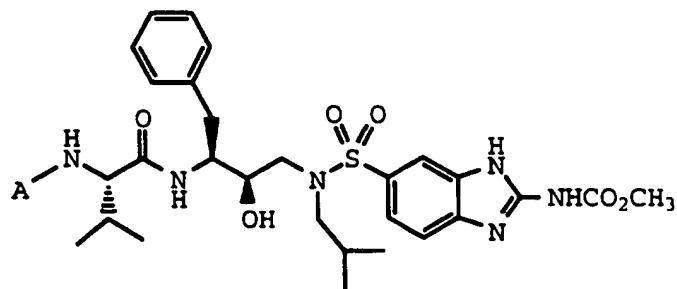
TABLE 7A

5	Entry	A
	<chem>CCN(C)C=O</chem>	<chem>CCNHC(=O)C</chem>
	<chem>CCNHC(=O)C</chem>	<chem>CCNHC(=O)CC</chem>
	<chem>CCCCNHC(=O)C</chem>	<chem>C1CCNHC(=O)C1</chem>
	<chem>CCOCNHC(=O)C</chem>	<chem>C1CCCCNHC(=O)C1</chem>
	<chem>CCOCNHC(=O)C</chem>	<chem>CC1CCCCNHC(=O)C1</chem>
	<chem>CC(C)NHC(=O)C</chem>	<chem>C1CCCCNHC(=O)C1</chem>

TABLE 7B

5	Entry	A

200

TABLE 7C

5

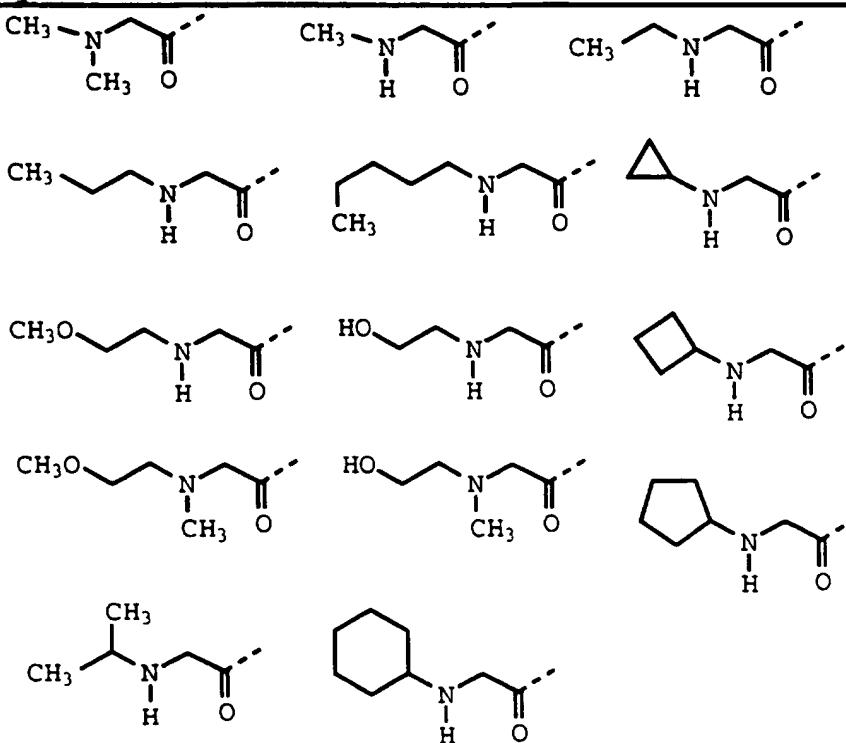
EntryA

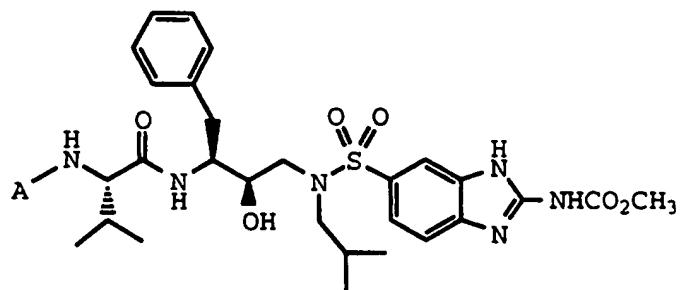
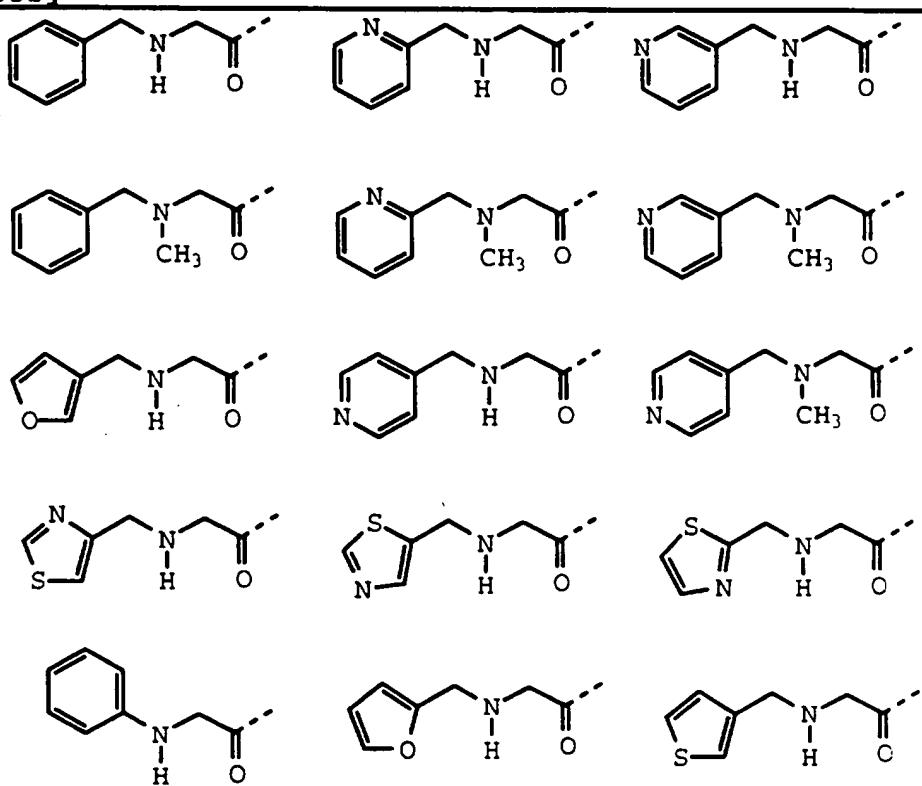
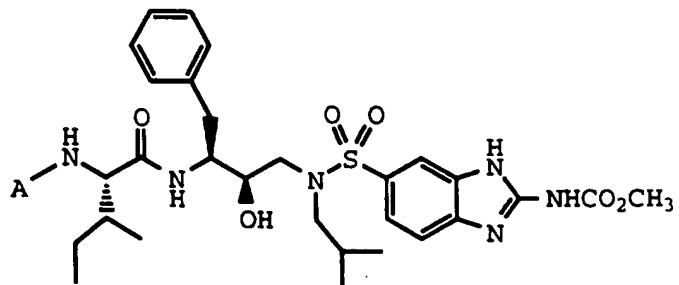
TABLE 7D5 **Entry****A**

TABLE 7E



A

<chem>CC(C)N(CC(=O)C)C</chem>	<chem>CCN(CC(=O)C)C</chem>	<chem>CC(C)CN(CC(=O)C)C</chem>
<chem>CCCCN(CC(=O)C)C</chem>	<chem>CCCNC(CC(=O)C)C</chem>	<chem>C1CCN(CC(=O)C)C1</chem>
<chem>CCOCN(CC(=O)C)C</chem>	<chem>CCON(CC(=O)C)C</chem>	<chem>C1CCCCN(CC(=O)C)C1</chem>
<chem>CCOCN(CC(=O)C)C</chem>	<chem>CCON(CC(=O)C)C</chem>	<chem>C1CCCCN(CC(=O)C)C1</chem>
<chem>CC(C)N(CC(=O)C)C</chem>	<chem>CCN(CC(=O)C)C</chem>	<chem>C1CCCCN(CC(=O)C)C1</chem>

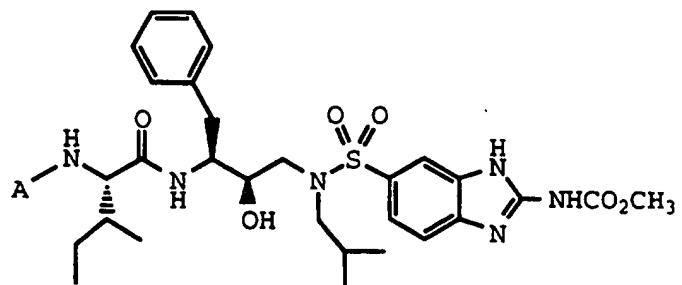
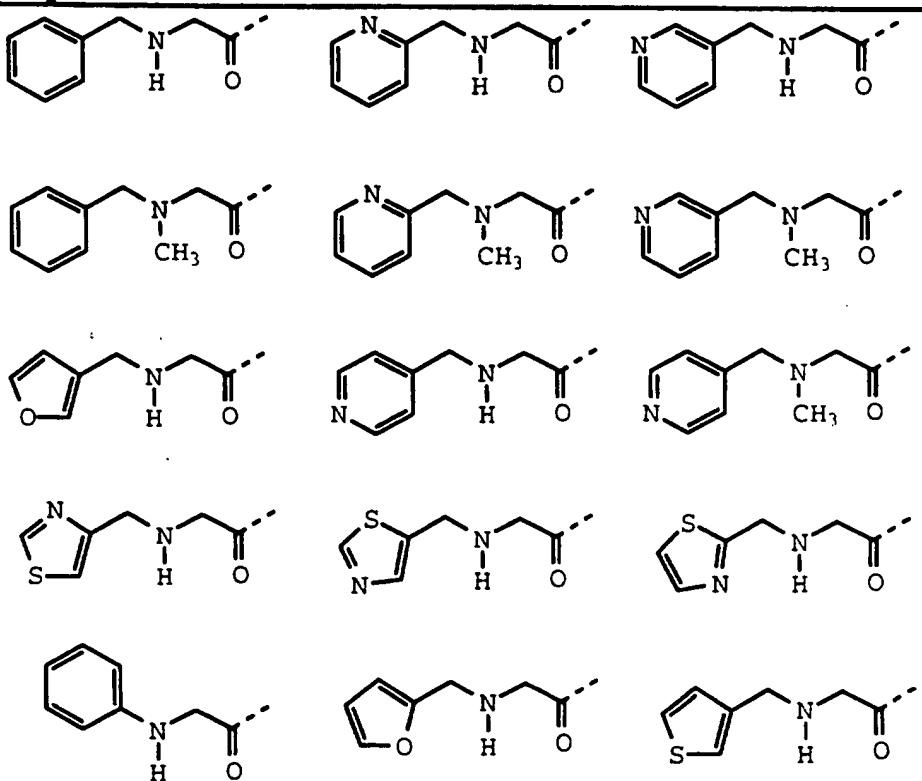
TABLE 7F5 Entry**A**

TABLE 7G

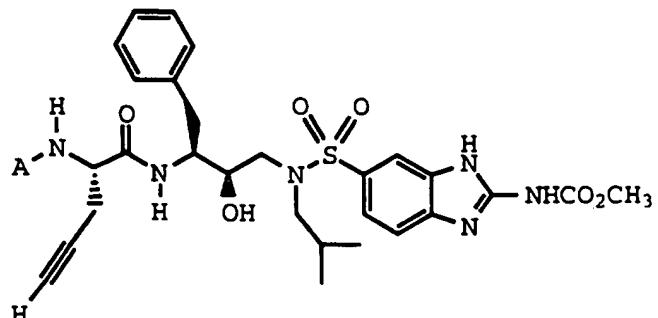
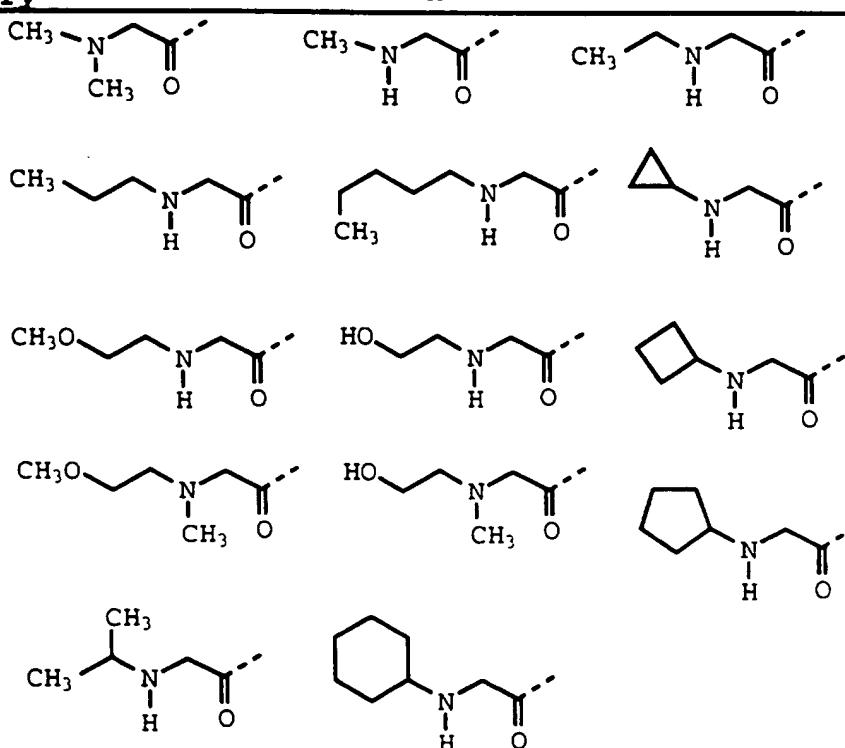
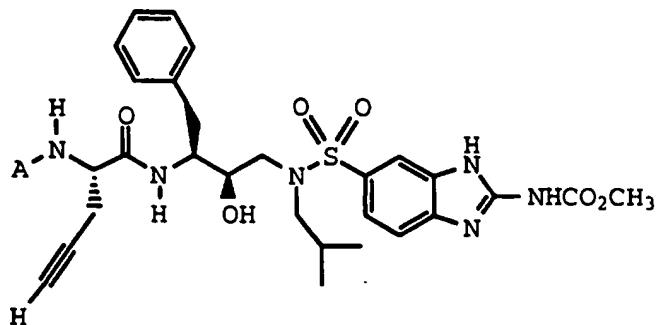
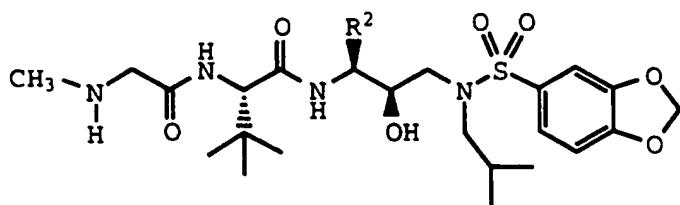
5 EntryA

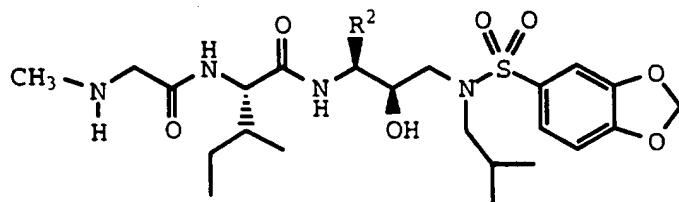
TABLE 7H

5

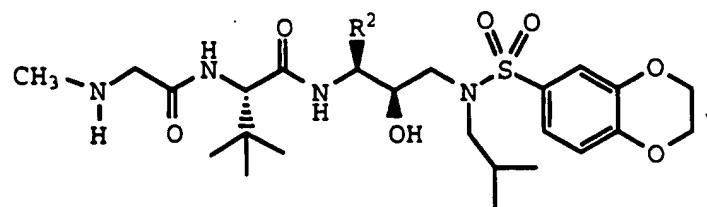
Entry**A**

TABLE 8A

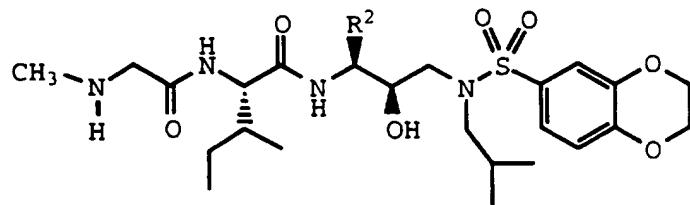
5	<u>Entry</u>	R^2
		$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CHCH}_2-$
		$\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2-$
		$\text{CH}_3\text{SCH}_2\text{CH}_2-$
		$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2-$
10		$(4-\text{CH}_3\text{OC}_6\text{H}_5)\text{CH}_2-$
		$(4-\text{FC}_6\text{H}_5)\text{CH}_2-$
		$(\text{naphth}-2-\text{y1})\text{CH}_2-$
		$\text{C}_6\text{H}_{11}\text{CH}_2-$
		$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{SCH}_2-$
		$(\text{naphth}-2-\text{y1})\text{SCH}_2-$

TABLE 8B

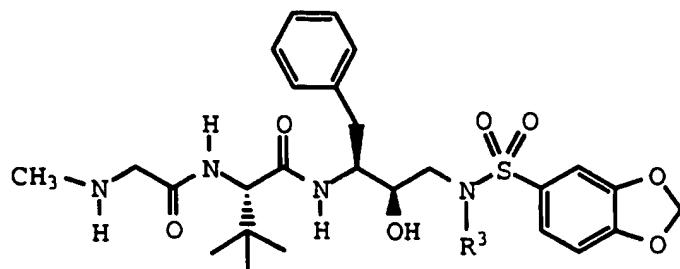
15	<u>Entry</u>	R^2
		$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CHCH}_2-$
		$\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2-$
		$\text{CH}_3\text{SCH}_2\text{CH}_2-$
		$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2-$
20		$(4-\text{CH}_3\text{OC}_6\text{H}_5)\text{CH}_2-$
		$(4-\text{FC}_6\text{H}_5)\text{CH}_2-$
		$(\text{naphth}-2-\text{y1})\text{CH}_2-$
		$\text{C}_6\text{H}_{11}\text{CH}_2-$
		$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{SCH}_2-$
		$(\text{naphth}-2-\text{y1})\text{SCH}_2-$

TABLE 8C

5	<u>Entry</u>	<u>R²</u>
	(CH ₃) ₂ CHCH ₂ -	(4-FC ₆ H ₅)CH ₂ -
	CH ₃ CH ₂ CH ₂ CH ₂ -	(naphth-2-yl)CH ₂ -
	CH ₃ SCH ₂ CH ₂ -	C ₆ H ₁₁ CH ₂ -
	C ₆ H ₅ CH ₂ -	C ₆ H ₅ SCH ₂ -
10	(4-CH ₃ OC ₆ H ₅)CH ₂ -	(naphth-2-yl)SCH ₂ -

TABLE 8D

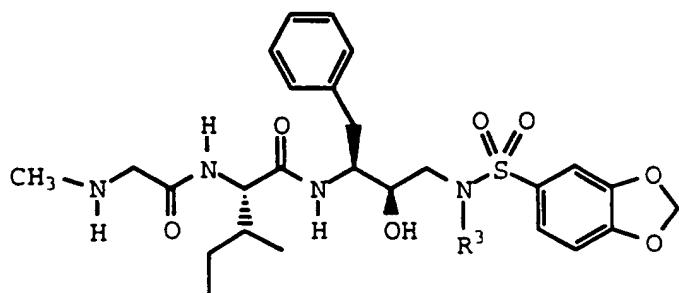
15	<u>Entry</u>	<u>R²</u>
	(CH ₃) ₂ CHCH ₂ -	(4-FC ₆ H ₅)CH ₂ -
	CH ₃ CH ₂ CH ₂ CH ₂ -	(naphth-2-yl)CH ₂ -
	CH ₃ SCH ₂ CH ₂ -	C ₆ H ₁₁ CH ₂ -
	C ₆ H ₅ CH ₂ -	C ₆ H ₅ SCH ₂ -
20	(4-CH ₃ OC ₆ H ₅)CH ₂ -	(naphth-2-yl)SCH ₂ -

TABLE 9A

Entry	R³
-CH ₂ CH ₂ CH ₃	
-CH ₂ CH ₂ CH ₂ CH ₃	
-CH ₂ CH(CH ₃) ₂	
-CH ₂ CH ₂ CH(CH ₃) ₂	

TABLE 9B

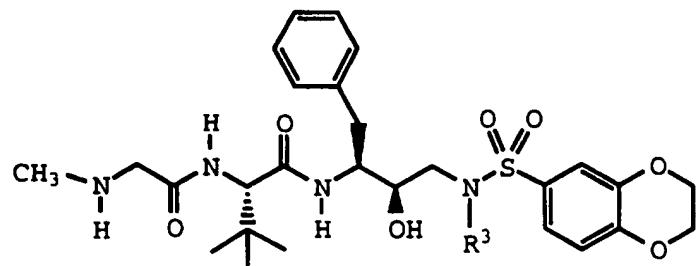
10



Entry	R³
-CH ₂ CH ₂ CH ₃	
-CH ₂ CH ₂ CH ₂ CH ₃	
-CH ₂ CH(CH ₃) ₂	
-CH ₂ CH ₂ CH(CH ₃) ₂	

15

TABLE 9C



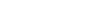
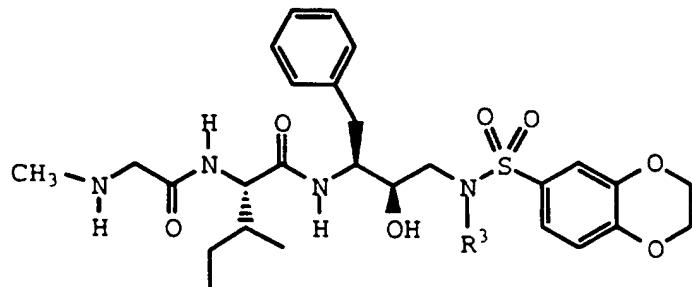
5	<u>Entry</u>	R^3
	$-CH_2CH_2CH_3$	
	$-CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_3$	
	$-CH_2CH(CH_3)_2$	
	$-CH_2CH_2CH(CH_3)_2$	

TABLE 9D



<u>Entry</u>	R^3
-CH ₂ CH ₂ CH ₃	
-CH ₂ CH ₂ CH ₂ CH ₃	
-CH ₂ CH(CH ₃) ₂	
-CH ₂ CH ₂ CH(CH ₃) ₂	

210

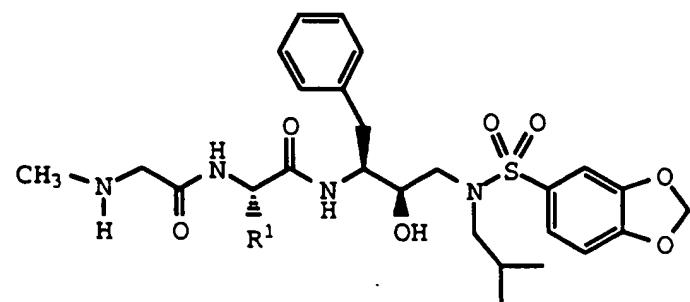
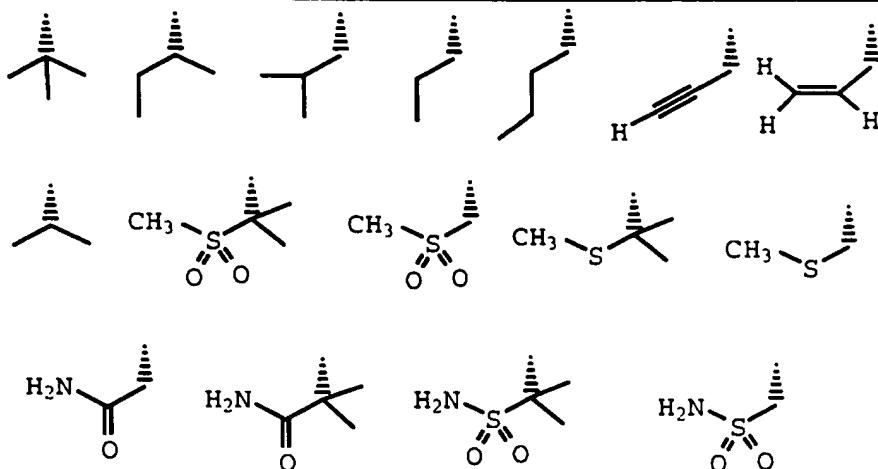
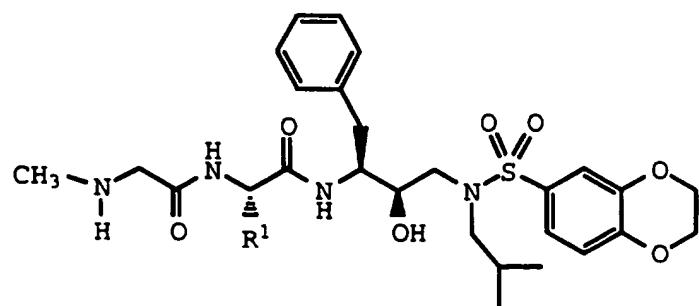
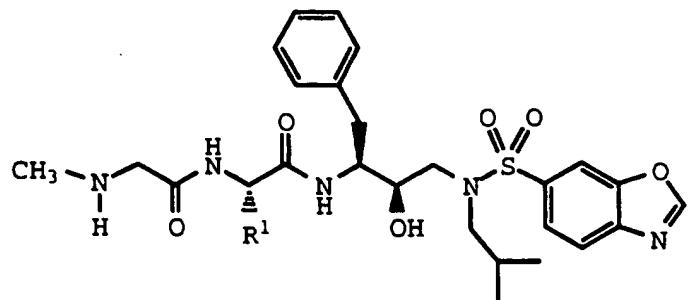
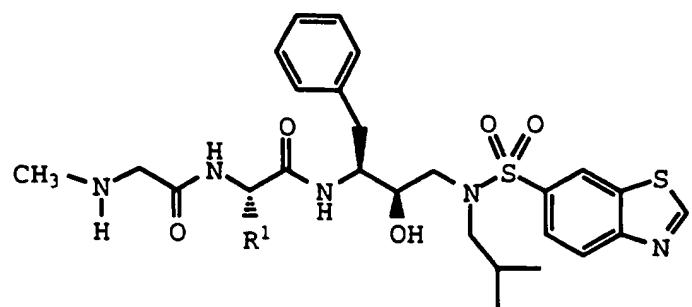
TABLE 10A5 EntryR¹

TABLE 10B

5	<u>Entry</u>	<u>R¹</u>

TABLE 10C

5	<u>Entry</u>	<u>R¹</u>

TABLE 10D

5	<u>Entry</u>	<u>R^1</u>

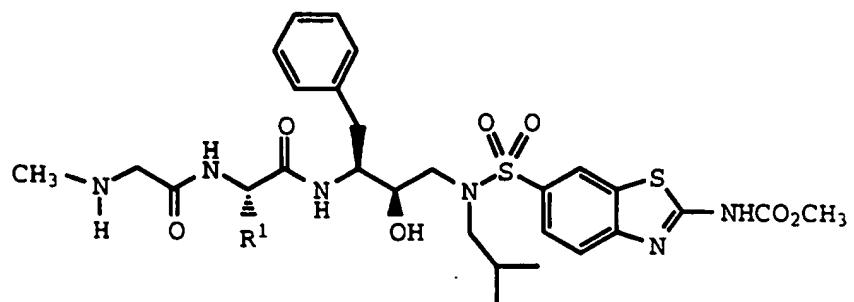
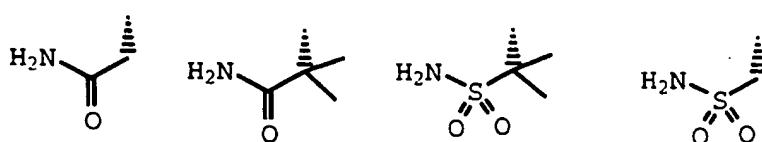
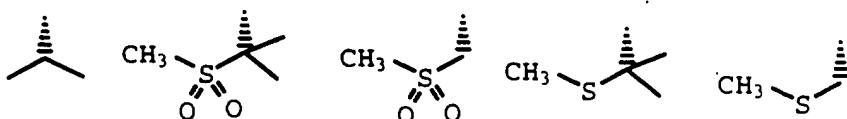
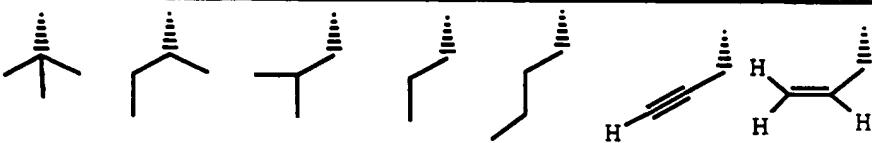
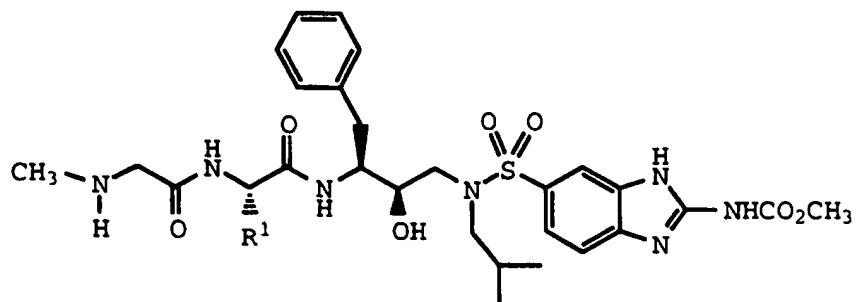
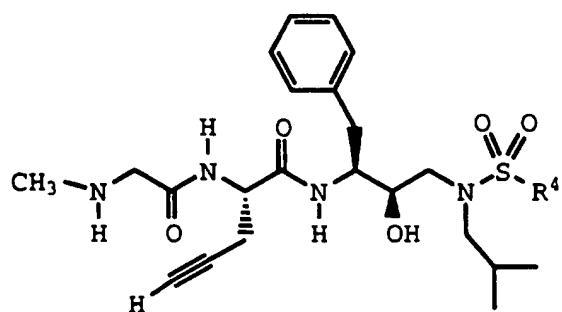
TABLE 10E5 Entry R^1 

TABLE 10F

5	<u>Entry</u>	<u>R</u> ¹

TABLE 11A

5

Entry**R⁴**

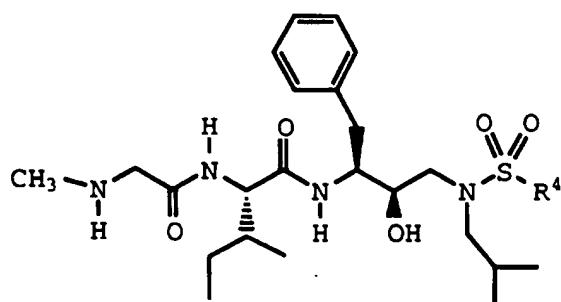
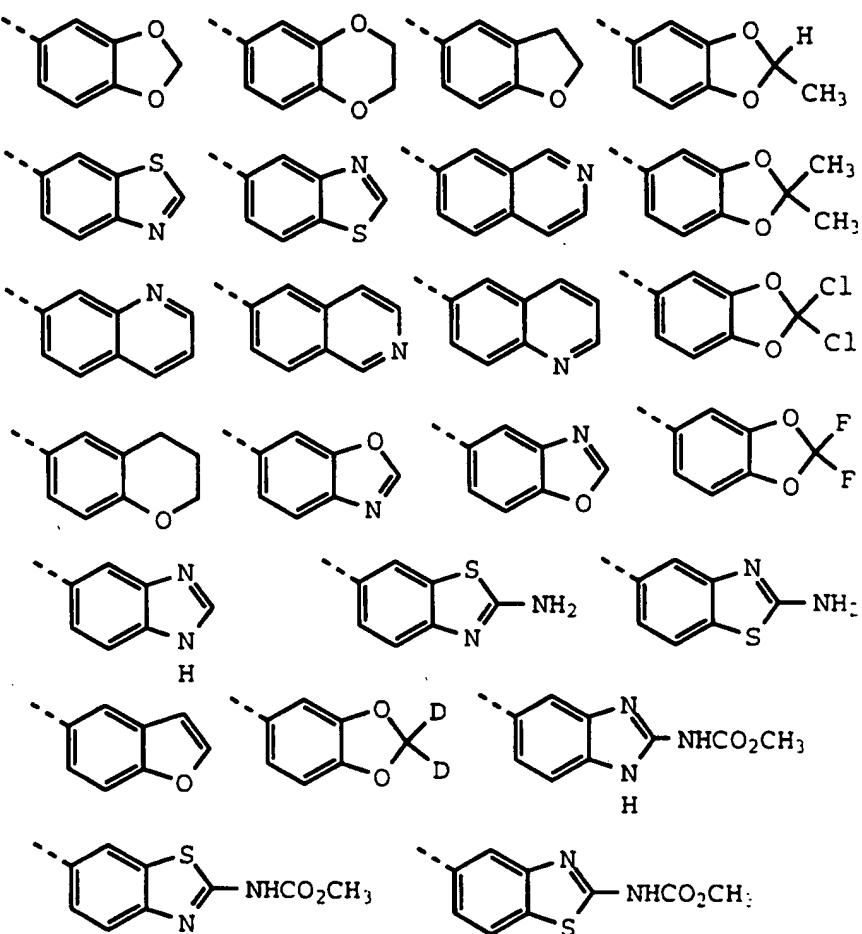
TABLE 11B5 EntryR⁴

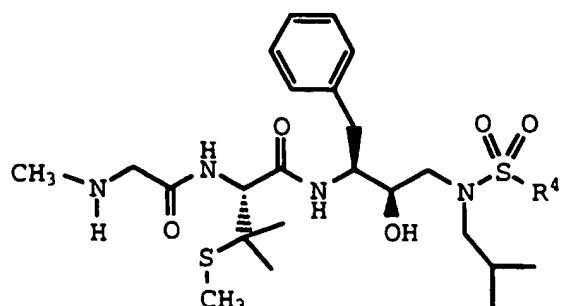
TABLE 11C5 **Entry****R'4**

TABLE 11D

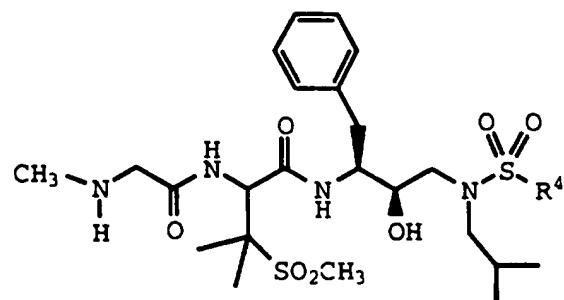


TABLE 11E

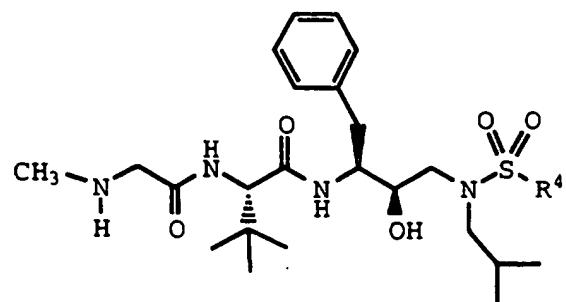
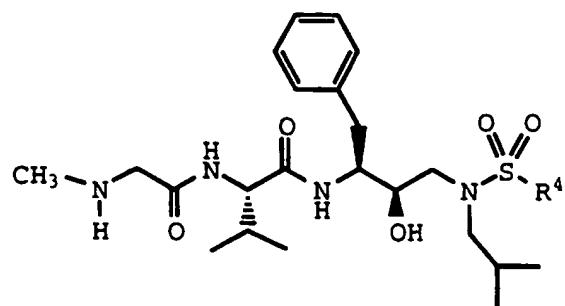


TABLE 11F

5	<u>Entry</u>	<u>R⁴</u>

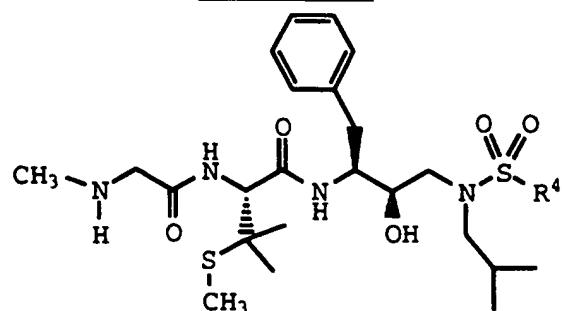
TABLE 12A

Entry	R^4
	<img alt="Structure 145: 2-(N,N-diphenyltridecadenylpentadecenylheptadecen

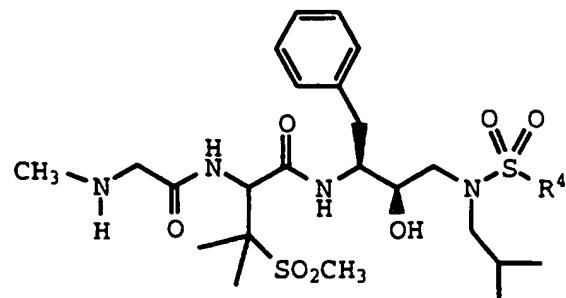
TABLE 12B

Entry	R^4
	<img alt

TABLE 12C

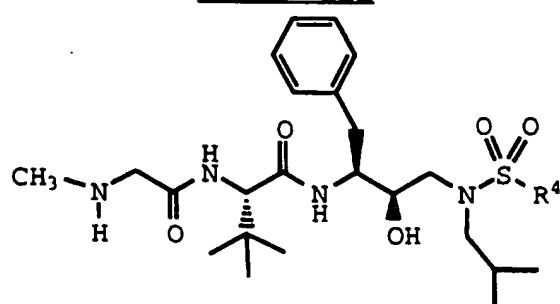


<u>Entry</u>	<u>R⁴</u>
</	

TABLE 12D

<u>Entry</u>	<u>R4</u>

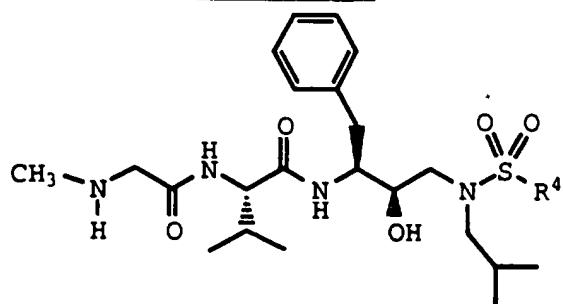
TABLE 12E



Entry

R⁴

TABLE 12F

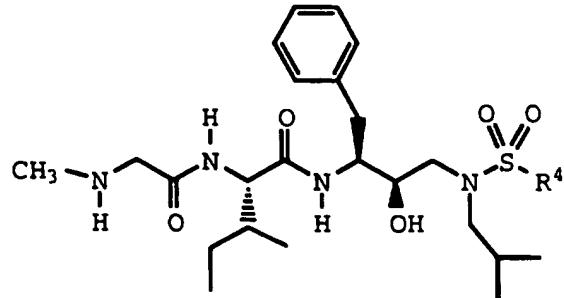


Entry	R ⁴

TABLE 13A

Entry	R^4

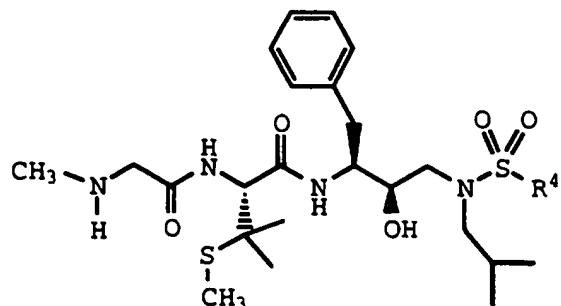
TABLE 13B



Entry **R⁴**

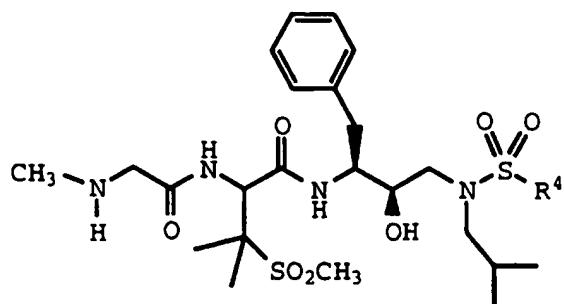
230

TABLE 13C



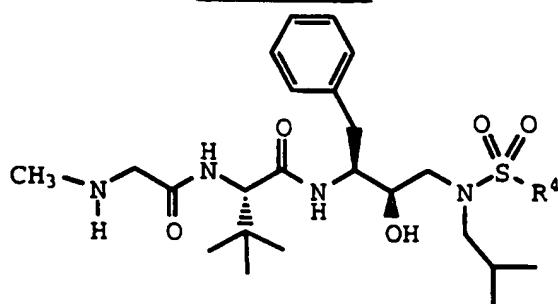
Entry R⁴

TABLE 13D



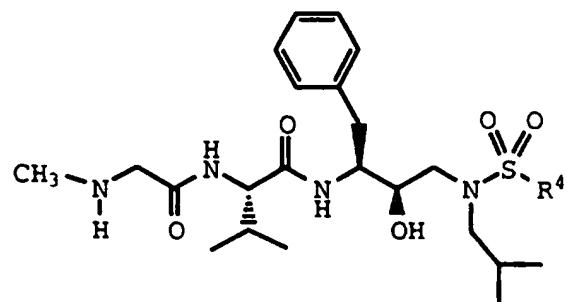
Entry	R^4

TABLE 13E



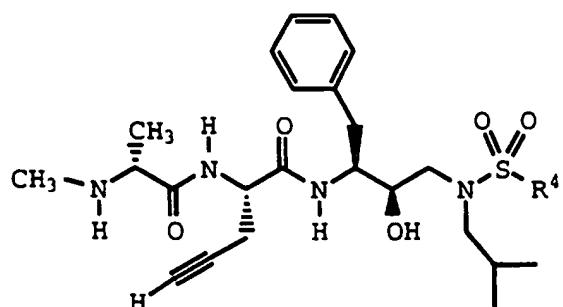
Entry **R⁴**

TABLE 13F



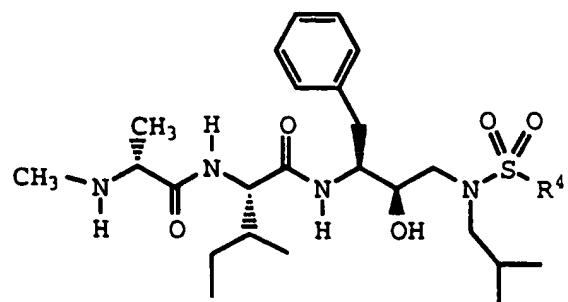
Entry	R4

TABLE 14A



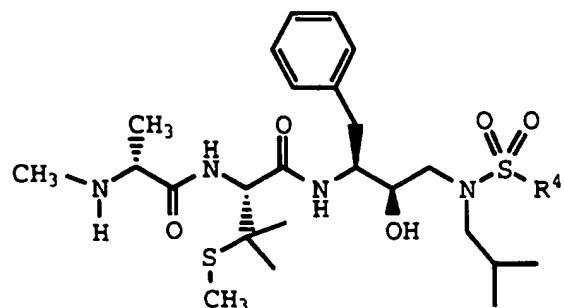
5	Entry	R^4
	1	
	2	
	3	
	4	
	5	
	6	
	7	
	8	
	9	
	10	
	11	
	12	
	13	
	14	
	15	
	16	
	17	
	18	
	19	
	20	

TABLE 14B



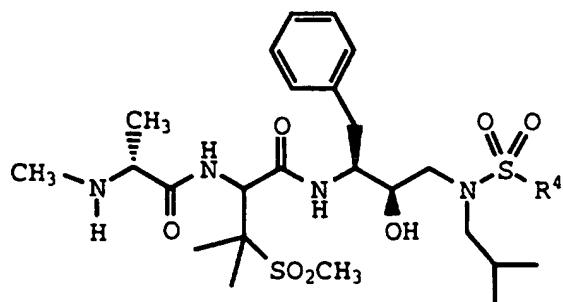
5	Entry	R^4

TABLE 14C



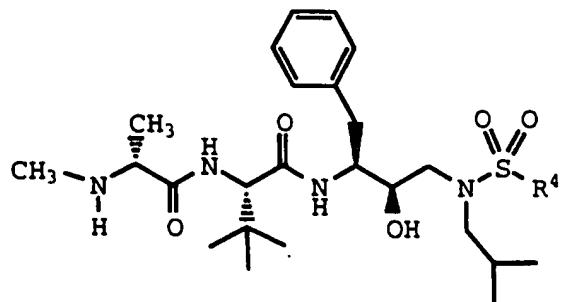
5	Entry	R ⁴

TABLE 14D



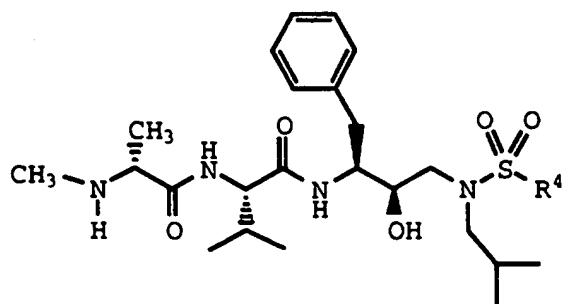
5	Entry	R ⁴

TABLE 14E



5 **Entry** R⁴

TABLE 14F

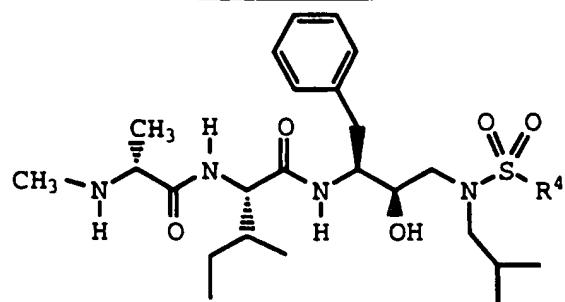


5	Entry	R ⁴

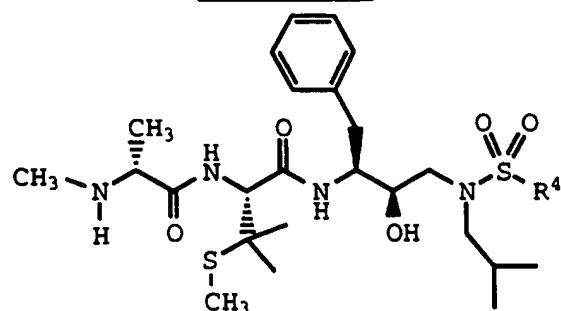
TABLE 15A

Entry	R^4
1	
2	
3	
4	
5	
6	
7	
8	
9	
10	
11	
12	
13	
14	
15	
16	
17	
18	
19	
20	
21	
22	
23	
24	
25	
26	
27	
28	
29	
30	
31	
32	
33	
34	
35	
36	
37	
38	
39	
40	
41	
42	
43	
44	
45	
46	
47	
48	
49	
50	
51	
52	
53	
54	
55	
56	
57	
58	
59	
60	
61	
62	
63	
64	
65	
66	
67	
68	
69	
70	
71	
72	
73	
74	
75	
76	
77	
78	
79	
80	
81	
82	
83	
84	
85	
86	
87	
88	
89	
90	
91	
92	
93	
94	
95	
96	
97	
98	
99	
100	
101	
102	
103	
104	
105	
106	
107	
108	
109	
110	
111	
112	
113	
114	
115	
116	
117	
118	
119	
120	
121	
122	
123	
124	
125	
126	
127	
128	
129	
130	
131	
132	
133	
134	
135	
136	
137	
138	
139	
140	
141	
142	
143	
144	
145	
146	
147	
148	
149	
150	
151	
152	
153	
154	
155	
156	
157	
158	
159	
160	
161	
162	
163	
164	
165	
166	
167	
168	
169	
170	
171	
172	
173	
174	
175	
176	
177	
178	
179	
180	
181	
182	
183	
184	
185	
186	
187	
188	
189	
190	
191	
192	
193	
194	
195	
196	
197	
198	
199	
200	
201	
202	
203	
204	
205	
206	
207	
208	
209	
210</td	

TABLE 15B

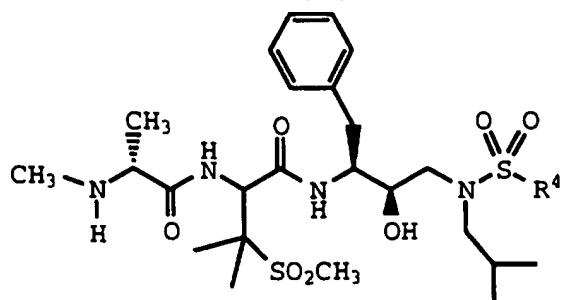


Entry	R ⁴

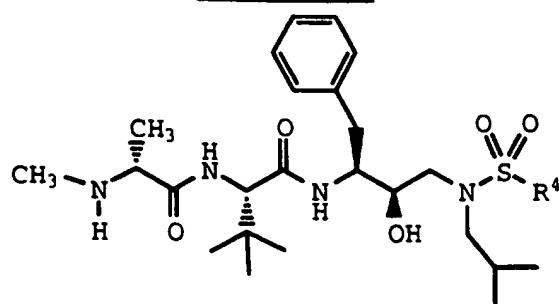
TABLE 15C

<u>Entry</u>	<u>R⁴</u>
5	

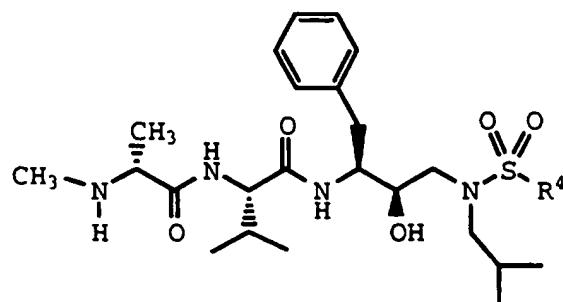
TABLE 1.5D



Entry	R^4

TABLE 15E

<u>Entry</u>	<u>R⁴</u>
	-NHCOCH ₃
	-NHCOCH ₂ Ph
	-NHCOCH ₂ CH ₃
	-NHCOCH ₂ C ₆ H ₅
	-NHCONH ₂
	-NHCONHCH ₂ CH ₃
	-NHCO-N(piperidin-1-yl)-
	-NHCO ₂ CH ₂ CH ₂ N(CH ₃) ₂
	-NHCOCH ₂ CH ₂ N(CH ₃) ₂
	-NHCHO
	-NHCO ₂ CH ₂ CH ₂ -N(cyclopentyl)-
	-NHCO ₂ CH ₂ CH ₂ -N(morpholin-4-yl)-
	-NHCO ₂ CH ₂ CH ₂ -N(piperidin-1-yl)-CH ₃
	-NHCO ₂ CH ₂ CH ₂ -N(piperidin-1-yl)-CH ₃
	-NHSO ₂ -N(piperidin-1-yl)-CH ₃
	-NHSO ₂ -N(piperidin-1-yl)-CH ₃

TABLE 15F

<u>Entry</u>	<u>R⁴</u>
	<img alt="Structure 166: 2-(N,N-dimethylaminocarb

EXAMPLE 77

The compounds of the present invention are effective HIV protease inhibitors. Utilizing an enzyme assay as described below, the compounds set forth in the examples herein disclosed inhibited the HIV enzyme. The preferred compounds of the present invention and their calculated IC₅₀ (inhibiting concentration 50%, i.e., the concentration at which the inhibitor compound reduces enzyme activity by 50%) values are shown in Table 16.

5 The enzyme method is described below. The substrate is 2-Ile-Nle-Phe(p-NO₂)-Gln-ArgNH₂. The positive control is MVT-101 (Miller, M. et al, Science, 246, 1149 (1989))

10 The assay conditions are as follows:

15 Assay buffer: 20 mM sodium phosphate, pH 6.4
20% glycerol
1 mM EDTA
1 mM DTT
0.1% CHAPS

20 The above described substrate is dissolved in DMSO, then diluted 10 fold in assay buffer. Final substrate concentration in the assay is 80 μM. HIV protease is diluted in the assay buffer to a final enzyme concentration of 12.3 nanomolar, based on a molecular weight of 10,780.

25

The final concentration of DMSO is 14% and the final concentration of glycerol is 18%. The test compound is dissolved in DMSO and diluted in DMSO to 10x the test concentration; 10μl of the enzyme preparation is added, the materials mixed and then the mixture is incubated at ambient temperature for 15 minutes. The enzyme reaction is initiated by the addition of 40μl of substrate. The increase in fluorescence is monitored at 4 time points (0, 30 8, 16 and 24 minutes) at ambient temperature. Each assay is carried out in duplicate wells.

35

The preceding examples can be repeated with similar success by substituting the generically or specifically described reactants and/or operating conditions of this invention for those used in the 5 preceding examples.

EXAMPLE 78

The effectiveness of various compounds were determined in the above-described enzyme assay and in a 10 CEM cell assay.

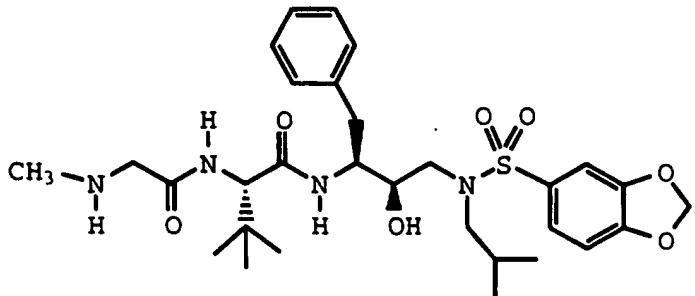
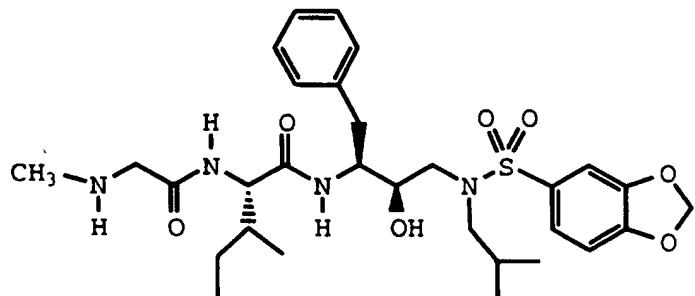
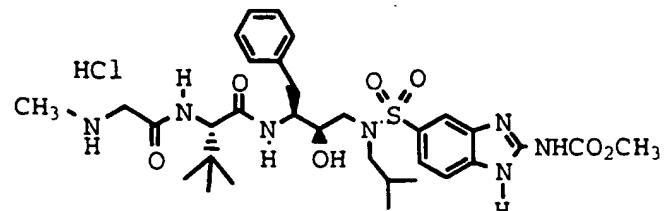
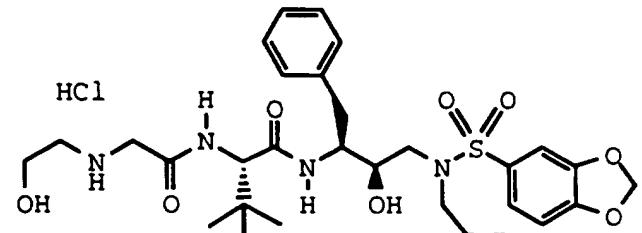
The HIV inhibition assay method of acutely infected cells is an automated tetrazolium based colorimetric assay essentially that reported by Pauwles et al., J. Virol. Methods, 20, 309-321 (1988). Assays were performed in 96-well tissue culture plates. CEM cells, a CD4+ cell line, were grown in RPMI-1640 medium (Gibco) supplemented with a 10% fetal calf serum and were then treated with polybrene (2 μ g/ml). An 80 μ l volume of medium containing 1×10^4 cells was dispensed into each well of the tissue culture plate. To each well was added a 100 μ l volume of test compound dissolved in tissue culture medium (or medium without test compound as a control) to achieve the desired final concentration and 20 the cells were incubated at 37°C for 1 hour. A frozen culture of HIV-1 was diluted in culture medium to a concentration of 5×10^4 TCID50 per ml (TCID50 = the dose of virus that infects 50% of cells in tissue culture), and a 20 μ L volume of the virus sample (containing 1000 25 TCID50 of virus) was added to wells containing test compound and to wells containing only medium (infected control cells). Several wells received culture medium without virus (uninfected control cells). Likewise, the intrinsic toxicity of the test compound was determined by adding medium without virus to several wells containing 30 test compound. In summary, the tissue culture plates contained the following experiments:

	Cells	Drug	Virus
5	1.	+	-
	2.	+	-
	3.	+	+
	4.	+	+

10 In experiments 2 and 4 the final concentrations of test compounds were 1, 10, 100 and 500 µg/ml. Either azidothymidine (AZT) or dideoxyinosine (ddI) was included as a positive drug control. Test compounds were dissolved in DMSO and diluted into tissue culture medium
15 so that the final DMSO concentration did not exceed 1.5% in any case. DMSO was added to all control wells at an appropriate concentration.

Following the addition of virus, cells were
20 incubated at 37°C in a humidified, 5% CO₂ atmosphere for 7 days. Test compounds could be added on days 0, 2 and 5 if desired. On day 7, post-infection, the cells in each well were resuspended and a 100µl sample of each cell suspension was removed for assay. A 20µL volume of a 5 mg/ml solution of 3-(4,5-dimethylthiazol-2-yl)-2,5-diphenyltetrazolium bromide (MTT) was added to each 100µL cell suspension, and the cells were incubated for 4 hours at 27°C in a 5% CO₂ environment. During this incubation, MTT is metabolically reduced by living cells resulting in
25 the production in the cell of a colored formazan product. To each sample was added 100µl of 10% sodium dodecylsulfate in 0.01 N HCl to lyse the cells, and samples were incubated overnight. The absorbance at 590 nm was determined for each sample using a Molecular
30 Devices microplate reader. Absorbance values for each set of wells is compared to assess viral control infection, uninfected control cell response as well as test compound by cytotoxicity and antiviral efficacy.

TABLE 16

Entry	Compound	IC ₅₀ (nM)	EC ₅₀ (nM)
5			
1		2	18
2		2	35
3		2	
10		2	85

250

TABLE 16 (Cont'd.)

Entry	Compound	IC ₅₀ (nM)	EC ₅₀ (nM)
5		2	10
6		3	24
7		2	8
10		2	
9		3	17

TABLE 16 (Cont'd)

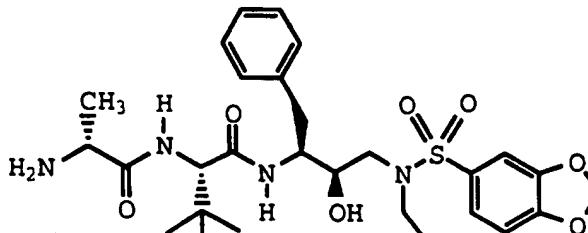
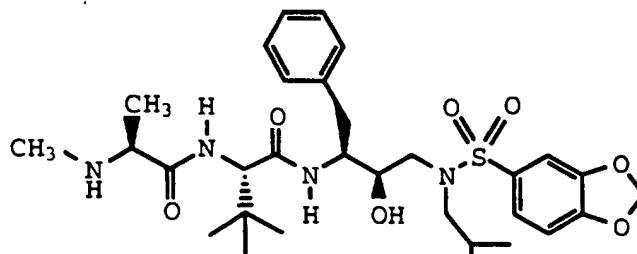
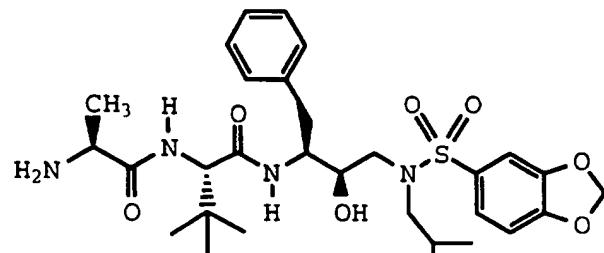
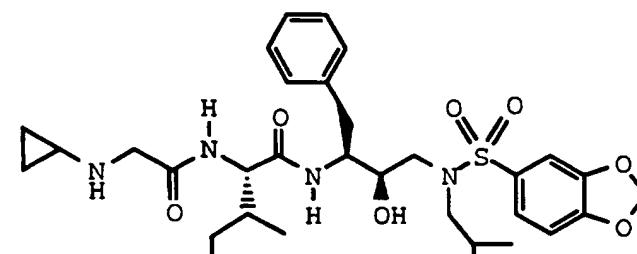
Entry	Compound	IC ₅₀ (nM)	EC ₅₀ (nM)
5			
10		2	22
11		1	
12		2	
10		3	

TABLE 16 (Cont'd)

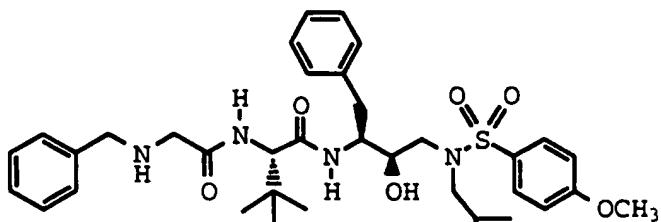
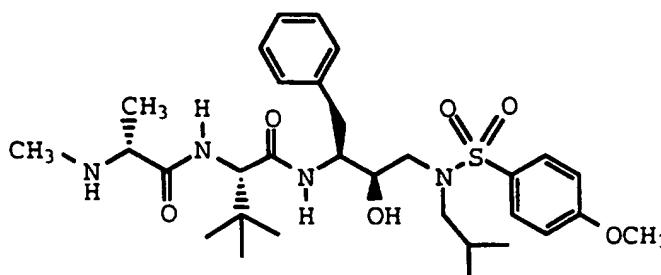
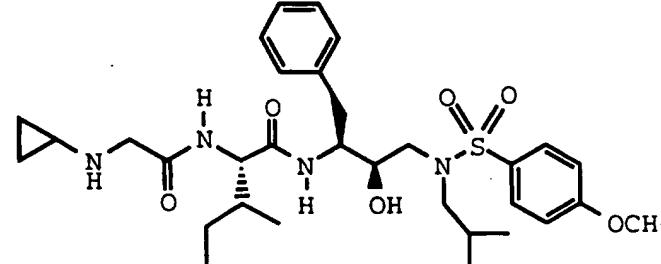
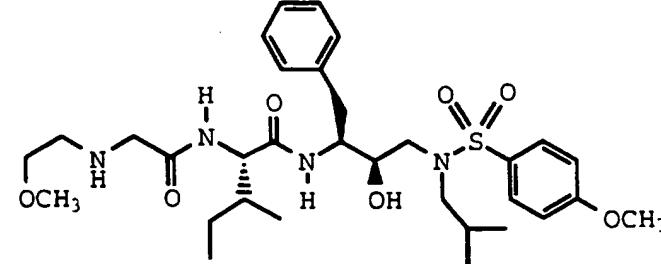
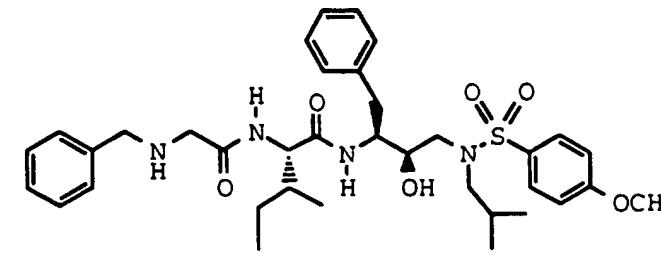
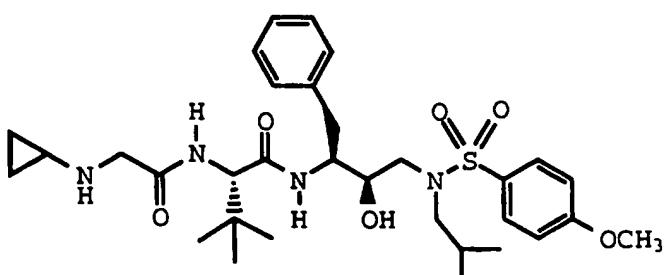
Entry	Compound	IC ₅₀ (nM)	EC ₅₀ (nM)
5			
14			2
15			2
16			2
10			2
17			2

TABLE 16 (Cont'd)

Entry	Compound	IC ₅₀ (nM)	EC ₅₀ (nM)
5	 19		3

The compounds of the present invention are effective antiviral compounds and, in particular, are effective retroviral inhibitors as shown above. Thus, the subject compounds are effective HIV protease inhibitors. It is contemplated that the subject compounds will also inhibit other retroviruses such as other lentiviruses in particular other strains of HIV, e.g. HIV-2, human T-cell leukemia virus, respiratory syncitial virus, simian immunodeficiency virus, feline leukemia virus, feline immuno-deficiency virus, hepadnavirus, cytomegalovirus and picornavirus. Thus, the subject compounds are effective in the treatment, prophylaxis of retroviral infections and/or the prevention of the spread of retroviral infections.

The subject compounds are also effective in preventing the growth of retroviruses in a solution. Both human and animal cell cultures, such as T-lymphocyte cultures, are utilized for a variety of well known purposes, such as research and diagnostic procedures including calibrators and controls. Prior to and during the growth and storage of a cell culture, the subject compounds may be added to the cell culture medium at an effective concentration to prevent the unexpected or undesired replication of a retrovirus that may inadvertently,

unknowingly or knowingly be present in the cell culture. The virus may be present originally in the cell culture, for example HIV is known to be present in human T-lymphocytes long before it is detectable in blood, or through exposure 5 to the virus. This use of the subject compounds prevents the unknowing or inadvertent exposure of a potentially lethal retrovirus to a researcher or clinician.

Compounds of the present invention can possess
10 one or more asymmetric carbon atoms and are thus capable of existing in the form of optical isomers as well as in the form of racemic or nonracemic mixtures thereof. The optical isomers can be obtained by resolution of the racemic mixtures according to conventional processes, for
15 example by formation of diastereoisomeric salts by treatment with an optically active acid or base. Examples of appropriate acids are tartaric, diacetyltartaric, dibenzoyltartaric, ditoluoyltartaric and camphorsulfonic acid and then separation of the
20 mixture of diastereoisomers by crystallization followed by liberation of the optically active bases from these salts. A different process for separation of optical isomers involves the use of a chiral chromatography column optimally chosen to maximize the separation of the
25 enantiomers. Still another available method involves synthesis of covalent diastereoisomeric molecules by reacting compounds of Formula I with an optically pure acid in an activated form or an optically pure isocyanate. The synthesized diastereoisomers can be
30 separated by conventional means such as chromatography, distillation, crystallization or sublimation, and then hydrolyzed to deliver the enantiomerically pure compound. The optically active compounds of Formula I can likewise be obtained by utilizing optically active starting
35 materials. These isomers may be in the form of a free acid, a free base, an ester or a salt.

The compounds of the present invention can be used in the form of salts derived from inorganic or organic acids. These salts include but are not limited to the following: acetate, adipate, alginate, citrate, 5 aspartate, benzoate, benzenesulfonate, bisulfate, butyrate, camphorate, camphorsulfonate, digluconate, cyclopentanepropionate, dodecylsulfate, ethanesulfonate, glucoheptanoate, glycerophosphate, hemisulfate, heptanoate, hexanoate, fumarate, hydrochloride, 10 hydrobromide, hydroiodide, 2-hydroxy-ethanesulfonate, lactate, maleate, methanesulfonate, nicotinate, 2-naphthalenesulfonate, oxalate, palmoate, pectinate, persulfate, 3-phenylpropionate, picrate, pivalate, propionate, succinate, tartrate, thiocyanate, tosylate, 15 mesylate and undecanoate. Also, the basic nitrogen-containing groups can be quaternized with such agents as lower alkyl halides, such as methyl, ethyl, propyl, and butyl chloride, bromides, and iodides; dialkyl sulfates like dimethyl, diethyl, dibutyl, and diamyl sulfates, 20 long chain halides such as decyl, lauryl, myristyl and stearyl chlorides, bromides and iodides, aralkyl halides like benzyl and phenethyl bromides, and others. Water or oil-soluble or dispersible products are thereby obtained.

25 Examples of acids which may be employed to form pharmaceutically acceptable acid addition salts include such inorganic acids as hydrochloric acid, sulphuric acid and phosphoric acid and such organic acids as oxalic acid, maleic acid, succinic acid and citric acid. Other 30 examples include salts with alkali metals or alkaline earth metals, such as sodium, potassium, calcium or magnesium or with organic bases.

Total daily dose administered to a host in 35 single or divided doses may be in amounts, for example, from 0.001 to 10 mg/kg body weight daily and more usually 0.01 to 1 mg. Dosage unit compositions may contain such

amounts of submultiples thereof to make up the daily dose. The amount of active ingredient that may be combined with the carrier materials to produce a single dosage form will vary depending upon the host treated and
5 the particular mode of administration.

The dosage regimen for treating a disease condition with the compounds and/or compositions of this invention is selected in accordance with a variety of
10 factors, including the type, age, weight, sex, diet and medical condition of the patient, the severity of the disease, the route of administration, pharmacological considerations such as the activity, efficacy, pharmacokinetic and toxicology profiles of the particular
15 compound employed, whether a drug delivery system is utilized and whether the compound is administered as part of a drug combination. Thus, the dosage regimen actually employed may vary widely and therefore may deviate from the preferred dosage regimen set forth above.
20

The compounds of the present invention may be administered orally, parenterally, by inhalation spray, rectally, or topically in dosage unit formulations containing conventional nontoxic pharmaceutically
25 acceptable carriers, adjuvants, and vehicles as desired. Topical administration may also involve the use of transdermal administration such as transdermal patches or iontophoresis devices. The term parenteral as used herein includes subcutaneous injections, intravenous,
30 intramuscular, intrasternal injection, or infusion techniques. Injectable preparations, for example, sterile injectable aqueous or oleaginous suspensions may be formulated according to the known art using suitable dispersing or wetting agents and suspending agents. The
35 sterile injectable preparation may also be a sterile injectable solution or suspension in a nontoxic parenterally acceptable diluent or solvent, for example,

as a solution in 1,3-butanediol. Among the acceptable vehicles and solvents that may be employed are water, Ringer's solution, and isotonic sodium chloride solution. In addition, sterile, fixed oils are conventionally 5 employed as a solvent or suspending medium. For this purpose any bland fixed oil may be employed including synthetic mono- or diglycerides. In addition, fatty acids such as oleic acid find use in the preparation of injectables.

10

Suppositories for rectal administration of the drug can be prepared by mixing the drug with a suitable nonirritating excipient such as cocoa butter and polyethylene glycols which are solid at ordinary 15 temperatures but liquid at the rectal temperature and will therefore melt in the rectum and release the drug.

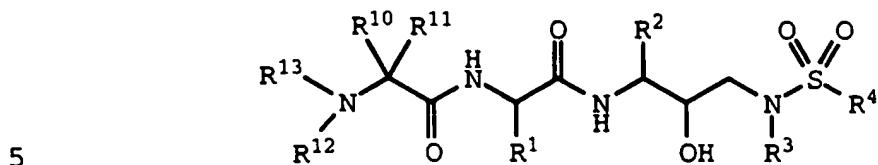
Solid dosage forms for oral administration may include capsules, tablets, pills, powders, and granules. 20 In such solid dosage forms, the active compound may be admixed with at least one inert diluent such as sucrose lactose or starch. Such dosage forms may also comprise, as in normal practice, additional substances other than inert diluents, e.g., lubricating agents such as 25 magnesium stearate. In the case of capsules, tablets, and pills, the dosage forms may also comprise buffering agents. Tablets and pills can additionally be prepared with enteric coatings.

30 Liquid dosage forms for oral administration may include pharmaceutically acceptable emulsions, solutions, suspensions, syrups, and elixirs containing inert diluents commonly used in the art, such as water. Such compositions may also comprise adjuvants, such as wetting 35 agents, emulsifying and suspending agents, and sweetening, flavoring, and perfuming agents.

- While the compounds of the invention can be administered as the sole active pharmaceutical agent, they can also be used in combination with one or more immunomodulators, antiviral agents or other antiinfective agents. For example, the compounds of the invention can be administered in combination with AZT, DDI, DDC or with glucosidase inhibitors, such as N-butyl-1-deoxynojirimycin or prodrugs thereof, for the prophylaxis and/or treatment of AIDS. When administered as a combination, the therapeutic agents can be formulated as separate compositions which are given at the same time or different times, or the therapeutic agents can be given as a single composition.
- The foregoing is merely illustrative of the invention and is not intended to limit the invention to the disclosed compounds. Variations and changes which are obvious to one skilled in the art are intended to be within the scope and nature of the invention which are defined in the appended claims. From the foregoing description, one skilled in the art can easily ascertain the essential characteristics of this invention, and without departing from the spirit and scope thereof, can make various changes and modifications of the invention to adapt it to various usages and conditions.

WHAT IS CLAIMED IS:

1. Compound represented by the formula:

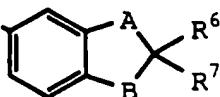


or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, prodrug or ester thereof, wherein

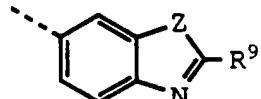
- 10 R¹ represents alkyl of 1-5 carbon atoms, alkenyl of 2-5 carbon atoms, alkynyl of 2-5 carbon atoms, hydroxyalkyl of 1-3 carbon atoms, alkoxyalkyl of 1-3 alkyl and 1-3 alkoxy carbon atoms, cyanoalkyl of 1-3 alkyl carbon atoms, imidazolylmethyl, -CH₂CONH₂, -CH₂CH₂CONH₂, -CH₂S(O)₂NH₂, -CH₂SCH₃, -CH₂S(O)CH₃, -CH₂S(O)₂CH₃, -C(CH₃)₂SCH₃, -C(CH₃)₂S(O)CH₃ or -C(CH₃)₂S(O)₂CH₃ radicals;
- 20 R² represents radicals of alkyl of 1-5 carbon atoms, aralkyl of 1-3 alkyl carbon atoms, alkylthioalkyl of 1-3 alkyl carbon atoms, arylthioalkyl of 1-3 alkyl carbon atoms or cycloalkylalkyl of 1-3 alkyl carbon atoms and 3-6 ring member carbon atoms;
- 25 R³ represents radicals of alkyl radical of 1-5 carbon atoms, cycloalkyl of 5-8 ring members or cycloalkylmethyl radical of 3-6 ring members;
- 30 R¹⁰ represents hydrogen, alkyl, hydroxyalkyl or alkoxyalkyl radicals, wherein alkyl and alkoxy are each 1-3 carbon atoms;
- 35 R¹¹ represents hydrogen, alkyl of 1-5 carbon atoms, hydroxyalkyl of 1-4 carbon atoms, alkoxyalkyl of 1-4 alkyl carbon atoms, benzyl, imidazolylmethyl,

-CH₂CH₂CONH₂, -CH₂CONH₂, -CH₂CH₂SCH₃ or -CH₂SCH₃ radicals or the sulfone or sulfoxide derivatives thereof;

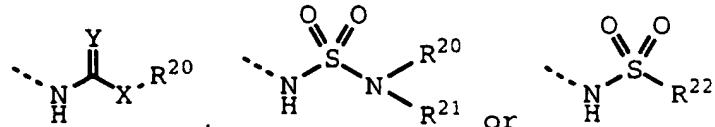
- 5 R⁴ represents aryl provided R¹¹ is other than a hydrogen radical, or R⁴ represents benzo fused 5 to 6 ring member heteroaryl or benzo fused 5 to 6 ring member heterocyclo radicals; or a radical of the formula



- 10 wherein A and B each independently represent O, S, SO or SO₂; R⁶ represents deuterium, alkyl of 1-5 carbon atoms, fluoro or chloro radicals; R⁷ represents hydrogen, deuterium, methyl, fluoro or chloro radicals; or a radical of the formula



- 15 wherein Z represents O, S or NH; and R⁹ represents a radical of formula



wherein Y represents O, S or NH; X represents a bond, O or NR²¹;

20

- R²⁰ represents hydrogen, alkyl of 1 to 5 carbon atoms, alkenyl of 2 to 5 carbon atoms, alkynyl of 2 to 5 carbon atoms, aralkyl of 1 to 5 alkyl carbon atoms, heteroaralkyl of 5 to 6 ring members and 1 to 5 alkyl carbon atoms, heterocycloalkyl of 5 to 6 ring members and 1 to 5 alkyl carbon atoms, aminoalkyl of 2 to 5 carbon atoms, N-mono-substituted or N,N-disubstituted aminoalkyl of 2 to 5 alkyl carbon atoms wherein said substituents are radicals of alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms, aralkyl of 1 to 3 alkyl carbon atoms radicals, carboxyalkyl of 1 to 5 carbon atoms, alkoxy carbonylalkyl of 1 to 5 alkyl carbon atoms,

cyanoalkyl of 1 to 5 carbon atoms or hydroxyalkyl of 2 to 5 carbon atoms;

R²¹ represents hydrogen radical or alkyl radical of 1 to 3 carbon atoms; or the radical of formula -NR²⁰R²¹ represents a 5 to 6 ring member heterocyclo radical; and

R²² represents alkyl radical of 1 to 3 carbon atoms or R²⁰R²¹N-alkyl radical of 1 to 3 alkyl carbon atoms; and

10

R¹² and R¹³ each independently represent hydrogen, alkyl, aralkyl, heteroaralkyl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkylalkyl, hydroxyalkyl, alkoxyalkyl, aryl or heteroaryl radicals, wherein alkyl is 1-5 carbon atoms, cycloalkyl is 3-6 ring member cycloalkyl optionally benzo fused, and heteroaryl is 5 to 6 ring member heteroaryl optionally benzo fused.

20

2. Compound of Claim 1, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, prodrug or ester thereof, wherein

20

R¹ represents alkyl of 1-4 carbon atoms, alkenyl of 2-3 carbon atoms, alkynyl of 3-4 carbon atoms, cyanomethyl, imidazolylmethyl, -CH₂CONH₂, -CH₂CH₂CONH₂, -CH₂S(O)₂NH₂, -CH₂SCH₃, -CH₂S(O)CH₃, -CH₂S(O)₂CH₃, -C(CH₃)₂SCH₃, 25 -C(CH₃)₂S(O)CH₃ or -C(CH₃)₂S(O)₂CH₃ radicals;

30

R² represents radicals of alkyl of 3-5 carbon atoms, arylmethyl, alkylthioalkyl of 1-3 alkyl carbon atoms, arylthiomethyl or cycloalkylmethyl of 5-6 ring member carbon atoms radicals;

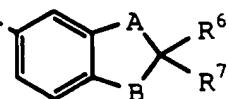
35

R³ represents alkyl of 1-5 carbon atoms, cycloalkylmethyl of 3-6 ring members, cyclohexyl or cycloheptyl radicals;

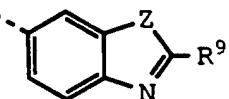
35

R⁴ represents phenyl, 2-naphthyl, 4-methoxyphenyl, 4-hydroxyphenyl, 3,4-dimethoxyphenyl, 3-aminophenyl or 4-aminophenyl radicals provided R¹¹ is other than a

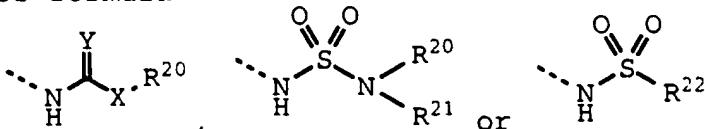
- hydrogen radical; or R⁴ represents 2-amino-benzothiazol-5-yl, 2-amino-benzothiazol-6-yl, benzothiazol-5-yl, benzothiazol-6-yl, benzoxazol-5-yl, 2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl, benzofuran-5-yl, 1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl or 1,4-benzodioxan-6-yl radicals; or a radical of the formula



- wherein A and B each represent O; R⁶ represents deuterium, methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl or fluoro radicals; and R⁷ represents hydrogen, deuterium, methyl or fluoro radicals; or a radical of the formula



- wherein Z represents O, S or NH; and R⁹ represents a radical of formula



- wherein Y represents O, S or NH; X represents a bond, O or NR²¹;

- R²⁰ represents hydrogen, alkyl of 1 to 5 carbon atoms, phenylalkyl of 1 to 3 alkyl carbon atoms, heterocycloalkyl of 5 to 6 ring members and 1 to 3 alkyl carbon atoms, or N-mono-substituted or N,N-disubstituted aminoalkyl of 2 to 3 alkyl carbon atoms wherein said substituents are alkyl radicals of 1 to 3 carbon atoms; and

- R²¹ represents hydrogen or methyl radicals; or the radical of formula -NR²⁰R²¹ represents pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, piperazinyl, 4-methylpiperazinyl, 4-benzylpiperazinyl, morpholinyl or thiomorpholinyl radicals; and

- R²² represents alkyl radical of 1 to 3 carbon atoms; and

R¹² and R¹³ each independently represent hydrogen, alkyl of 1-5 carbon atoms, phenylalkyl of 1-3 alkyl carbon atoms, 5 to 6 ring member heteroaralkyl of 1-3 alkyl carbon atoms, cycloalkyl of 3-6 ring members,
5 cycloalkylmethyl of 3-6 ring members, hydroxyalkyl of 1-3 carbon atoms, methoxyalkyl of 1-3 alkyl carbon atoms or phenyl radicals.

3. Compound of Claim 2, or a pharmaceutically
10 acceptable salt, prodrug or ester thereof, wherein

R¹ represents iso-propyl, sec-butyl, tert-butyl, 3-propynyl, cyanomethyl, imidazolylmethyl, -CH₂CONH₂, -CH₂SCH₃, -CH₂S(O)CH₃, -CH₂S(O)₂CH₃, -C(CH₃)₂SCH₃,
15 -C(CH₃)₂S(O)CH₃ or -C(CH₃)₂S(O)₂CH₃ radicals;

R² represents isobutyl, n-butyl, CH₃SCH₂CH₂-, phenylthiomethyl, (2-naphthylthio)methyl, benzyl, 4-methoxyphenylmethyl, 4-hydroxyphenylmethyl, 4-fluorophenylmethyl or cyclohexylmethyl radicals;
20

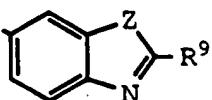
R³ represents propyl, isoamyl, isobutyl, butyl, cyclohexyl, cycloheptyl, cyclopentylmethyl or cyclohexylmethyl radicals;

25 R¹⁰ represents hydrogen, methyl, ethyl, propyl, methoxymethyl, methoxyethyl, hydroxymethyl or hydroxyethyl radicals;

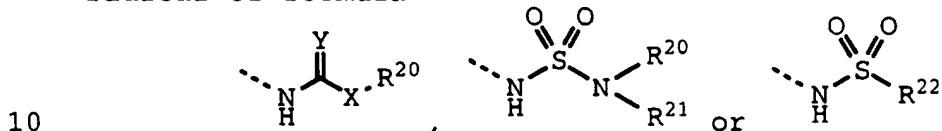
30 R¹¹ represents hydrogen, methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, butyl, secbutyl, isobutyl, tertbutyl, hydroxymethyl, hydroxyethyl, methoxymethyl or methoxyethyl radicals;

35 R⁴ represents phenyl, 2-naphthyl, 4-methoxyphenyl or 4-hydroxyphenyl radicals provided R¹¹ is other than a hydrogen radical; or R⁴ represents benzothiazol-5-yl,

benzothiazol-6-yl, benzoxazol-5-yl, 2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl, benzofuran-5-yl, 1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl, 2-methyl-1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl, 2,2-dimethyl-1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl, 2,2-dideutero-1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl, 5 2,2-difluoro-1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl or 1,4-benzodioxan-6-yl radicals; or a radical of the formula



wherein Z represents O, S or NH; and R⁹ represents a radical of formula



wherein Y represents O, S or NH; X represents a bond, O or NR²¹;

15 R²⁰ represents hydrogen, methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, isobutyl, benzyl, 2-(1-pyrrolidinyl)ethyl, 2-(1-piperidinyl)ethyl, 2-(1-piperazinyl)ethyl, 2-(4-methylpiperazin-1-yl)ethyl, 2-(1-morpholinyl)ethyl, 2-(1-thiamorpholinyl)ethyl or 2-(N,N-dimethylamino)ethyl radicals;

20

R²¹ represents a hydrogen radical; and

R²² represents methyl radical; and

25 R¹² and R¹³ each independently represent hydrogen, methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, cyclohexylmethyl, benzyl, phenylethyl, 2-pyridylmethyl, 3-pyridylmethyl, 4-pyridylmethyl, 2-(2-pyridyl)ethyl, 2-(3-pyridyl)ethyl, 2-(4-pyridyl)ethyl, furylmethyl, 2-furylethyl, 2-hydroxyethyl, 2-methoxyethyl or phenyl radicals.

4. Compound of Claim 3 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, prodrug or ester thereof, wherein n represents 1;

5 R¹ represents sec-butyl, tert-butyl, iso-propyl, 3-propynyl, cyanomethyl, or -C(CH₃)₂S(O)₂CH₃ radicals;

R² represents benzyl, 4-fluorophenylmethyl or cyclohexylmethyl radicals;

10

R¹⁰ and R¹¹ each independently represent hydrogen, methyl or ethyl radicals;

15

R⁴ represents phenyl, 4-methoxyphenyl or 4-hydroxyphenyl radicals provided R¹¹ is other than a hydrogen radical; or R⁴ represents benzothiazol-5-yl, benzothiazol-6-yl, 2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl, benzofuran-5-yl, 1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl, 2-methyl-1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl, 2,2-dimethyl-1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl, 2,2-dideutero-1,3-

20

benzodioxol-5-yl, 2,2-difluoro-1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl, 1,4-benzodioxan-6-yl, 2-(methoxycarbonylamino)benzothiazol-6-yl or 2-(methoxycarbonylamino)benzimidazol-5-yl radicals;

R¹² represents hydrogen or methyl radicals; and

25

R¹³ represents hydrogen, methyl, ethyl, propyl, cyclopropyl, isopropyl, benzyl, 2-phenylethyl, 2-pyridylmethyl, 3-pyridylmethyl, 4-pyridylmethyl, 2-(2-pyridyl)ethyl, 2-(3-pyridyl)ethyl, 2-(4-pyridyl)ethyl, furylmethyl, 2-furylethyl or 2-methoxyethyl radicals.

35

5. Compound of Claim 1 wherein said pharmaceutically acceptable salt is hydrochloric acid salt, sulphuric acid salt, phosphoric acid salt, oxalic acid salt, maleic acid salt, succinic acid salt, citric acid salt or methanesulfonic acid salt.

6. Compound of Claim 5 wherein said pharmaceutically acceptable salt is hydrochloric acid salt, oxalic acid salt, citric acid salt or methanesulfonic acid salt.

5

7. Compound of Claim 1 which is

- 10 2S-[(N-methylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethyl-butanamide;
- 15 2S-[(N-methylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-methyl-butanamide;
- 20 2S-[(N-methylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-cyanopropanamide;
- 25 2S-[(N-methylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methyl-pentanamide;
- 30 2S-[(N-methylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-4-pentynamide;
- 35 2S-[(N-methylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(benzofuran-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethyl-butanamide;
- 40 2S-[(N-methylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(benzofuran-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-methyl-butanamide;
- 45 2S-[(N-methylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(benzofuran-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-4-pentynamide;
- 50 2S-[(N-methylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(2-methyl-1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethyl-butanamide;

- 2S-[(N-methylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(2-methyl-1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-methyl-butanamide;
- 5 2S-[(N-methylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(2-methyl-1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-cyanopropanamide;
- 10 2S-[(N-methylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(2-methyl-1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methyl-pentanamide;
- 15 2S-[(N-methylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(2-methyl-1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-4-pentynamide;
- 20 2S-[(N-methylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethyl-butanamide;
- 25 2S-[(N-methylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-methyl-butanamide;
- 30 2S-[(N-methylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methyl-pentanamide;
- 35 2S-[(N-methylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-phenylmethyl)propyl]-4-pentynamide;
- 40 2S-[(N-methylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(benzothiazol-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethyl-butanamide;
- 45 2S-[(N-methylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(benzothiazol-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-cyanopropanamide;
- 50 2S-[(N-methylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(benzothiazol-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methyl-pentanamide;
- 55 2S-[(N-methylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(benzothiazol-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-4-pentynamide;

- 2S-[(N-methylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(2,2-difluoro-1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethyl-butanamide;
- 5 2S-[(N-methylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(2,2-difluoro-1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-methyl-butanamide;
- 10 2S-[(N-methylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(2,2-difluoro-1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-cyanopropanamide;
- 15 2S-[(N-methylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(2,2-difluoro-1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methyl-pentanamide;
- 20 2S-[(N-methylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(2,2-difluoro-1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-4-pentynamide;
- 25 2S-[(N-methylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,4-benzodioxan-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethyl-butanamide;
- 30 2S-[(N-methylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,4-benzodioxan-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-cyanopropanamide;
- 35 2S-[(N-methylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,4-benzodioxan-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methyl-pentanamide;
- 40 2S-[(N-methylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,4-benzodioxan-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-4-pentynamide;
- 45 2S-[(N,N-dimethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethyl-butanamide;
- 50 2S-[(N,N-dimethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-cyanopropanamide;
- 55 2S-[(N,N-dimethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methyl-pentanamide;

- 2S-[(N,N-dimethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-
1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-4-pentynamide;
- 5 2S-[(N,N-dimethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
[(benzofuran-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethyl-butanamide;
- 10 2S-[(N,N-dimethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
[(benzofuran-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-methyl-butanamide;
- 15 2S-[(N,N-dimethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
[(benzofuran-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-cyanopropanamide;
- 20 2S-[(N,N-dimethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
[(benzofuran-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methyl-pentanamide;
- 25 2S-[(N,N-dimethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
[(2-methyl-1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methyl
propyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethyl-
butanamide;
- 30 2S-[(N,N-dimethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
[(2-methyl-1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methyl
propyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-methyl-
butanamide;
- 35 2S-[(N,N-dimethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
[(2-methyl-1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methyl
propyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-
cyanopropanamide;
- 40 2S-[(N,N-dimethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
[(2-methyl-1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methyl
propyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methyl-
pentanamide;
- 45 2S-[(N,N-dimethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
[(2-methyl-1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methyl
propyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-4-pentynamide;
- 50 2S-[(N,N-dimethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
[(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)
amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethyl-butanamide;
- 55 2S-[(N,N-dimethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
[(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)
amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-methyl-butanamide;

- 2S-[(N,N-dimethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
[(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)
amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-cyanopropanamide;
- 5 2S-[(N,N-dimethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
[(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)
amino]-1S-phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methyl-pentanamide;
- 10 2S-[(N,N-dimethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
[(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)
amino]-1S-phenylmethyl)propyl]-4-pentynamide;
- 15 2S-[(N,N-dimethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
[(benzothiazol-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethyl-butanamide;
- 20 2S-[(N,N-dimethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
[(benzothiazol-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-methyl-butanamide;
- 25 2S-[(N,N-dimethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
[(benzothiazol-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methyl-pentanamide;
- 30 2S-[(N,N-dimethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
[(benzothiazol-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
(phenylmethyl)propyl]-4-pentynamide;
- 35 2S-[(N,N-dimethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
[(2,2-difluoro-1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-
methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-
dimethyl-butanamide;
- 40 2S-[(N,N-dimethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
[(2,2-difluoro-1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-
methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-methyl-
butanamide;
- 45 2S-[(N,N-dimethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
[(2,2-difluoro-1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-
methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-
cyanopropanamide;
- 50 2S-[(N,N-dimethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
[(2,2-difluoro-1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-
methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methyl-
pentanamide;
- 55 2S-[(N,N-dimethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
[(2,2-difluoro-1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-
methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-4-
pentynamide;

- 2S-[[(N,N-dimethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,4-benzodioxan-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethyl-butanamide;
- 5 2S-[[(N,N-dimethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,4-benzodioxan-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-methyl-butanamide;
- 10 2S-[[(N,N-dimethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,4-benzodioxan-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-cyanopropanamide;
- 15 2S-[[(N,N-dimethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,4-benzodioxan-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methyl-pentanamide;
- 20 2S-[[(N,N-dimethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,4-benzodioxan-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-4-pentynamide;
- 25 2S-[[(N-benzylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethyl-butanamide;
- 30 2S-[[(N-benzylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-methyl-butanamide;
- 35 2S-[[(N-benzylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(phenylsulfonyl)(2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methyl-pentanamide;
- 40 2S-[[(N-benzylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(phenylsulfonyl)(2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-methyl-butanamide;
- 45 2S-[[(N-benzylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(phenylsulfonyl)(2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methyl-pentanamide;
- 50 2S-[[(N-benzylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(4-methoxyphenyl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethyl-butanamide;
- 55 2S-[[(N-benzylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(4-methoxyphenyl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methyl-pentanamide;

- 2S-[(N-benzylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethyl-butanamide;
- 5 2S-[(N-benzylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-methyl-butanamide;
- 10 2S-[(N-benzylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methyl-pentanamide;
- 15 2S-[(N-benzylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(benzothiazol-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethyl-butanamide;
- 20 2S-[(N-benzylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(benzothiazol-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-methyl-butanamide;
- 25 2S-[(N-benzylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(benzothiazol-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methyl-pentanamide;
- 30 2S-[(N-benzylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(2-naphthyl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethyl-butanamide;
- 35 2S-[(N-benzylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(2-naphthyl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methyl-pentanamide;
- 40 2S-[(N-benzylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,4-benzodioxan-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethyl-butanamide;
- 45 2S-[(N-benzylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,4-benzodioxan-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-methyl-butanamide;
- 50 2S-[(N-benzylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]pent-4-ynamide;
- 55 2S-[(N-benzylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(phenylsulfonyl)(2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]pent-4-ynamide;

- 2S-[(N-benzylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(4-methoxyphenyl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]pent-4-ynamide;
- 5 2S-[(N-benzylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(benzothiazol-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]pent-4-ynamide;
- 10 2S-[(N-benzylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]pent-4-ynamide;
- 15 2S-[(N-benzylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(2-naphthyl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]pent-4-ynamide;
- 20 2S-[(N-benzylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,4-benzodioxan-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]pent-4-ynamide;
- 25 2S-[(N-benzylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]pent-4-ynamide;
- 30 2S-[(N-cyclopropylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethyl-butanamide;
- 35 2S-[(N-cyclopropylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methyl-pentanamide;
- 40 2S-[(N-cyclopropylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(phenylsulfonyl)(2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethyl-butanamide;
- 45 2S-[(N-cyclopropylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(phenylsulfonyl)(2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methyl-pentanamide;
- 50 2S-[(N-cyclopropylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(4-methoxyphenyl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethyl-butanamide;
- 55 2S-[(N-cyclopropylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-[(4-methoxyphenyl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-methyl-butanamide;

- 5 2S-[[(N-cyclopropylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
 [[(4-methoxyphenyl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
 (phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methyl-pentanamide;
- 10 2S-[[(N-cyclopropylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
 [[(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)
 amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethyl-butanamide;
- 15 2S-[[(N-cyclopropylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
 [[(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)
 amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methyl-pentanamide;
- 20 2S-[[(N-cyclopropylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
 [[(benzothiazol-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
 (phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethyl-butanamide;
- 25 2S-[[(N-cyclopropylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
 [[(benzothiazol-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
 (phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-methyl-butanamide;
- 30 2S-[[(N-cyclopropylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
 [[(2-naphthyl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
 (phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethyl-butanamide;
- 35 2S-[[(N-cyclopropylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
 [[(2-naphthyl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
 (phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-methyl-butanamide;
- 40 2S-[[(N-cyclopropylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
 [[(2-naphthyl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
 (phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methyl-pentanamide;
- 45 2S-[[(N-cyclopropylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
 [[(1,4-benzodioxan-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-
 1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethyl-butanamide;
- 50 2S-[[(N-cyclopropylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
 [[(1,4-benzodioxan-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-
 1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-methyl-butanamide;
- 55 2S-[[(N-cyclopropylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
 [[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-
 1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]pent-4-ynamide;

- 5 2S-[(N-cyclopropylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
[[phenylsulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
(phenylmethyl)propyl]pent-4-ynamide;
- 10 2S-[(N-cyclopropylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
[[4-methoxyphenyl]sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
(phenylmethyl)propyl]pent-4-ynamide;
- 15 2S-[(N-cyclopropylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
[[benzothiazol-6-yl]sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
(phenylmethyl)propyl]pent-4-ynamide;
- 20 2S-[(N-cyclopropylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
[[2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl]sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)
amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]pent-4-ynamide;
- 25 2S-[(N-cyclopropylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-3-
[[1,4-benzodioxan-6-yl]sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-
1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]pent-4-ynamide;
- 30 2S-[(N-2-methoxyethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-
3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)
amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethyl-butanamide;
- 35 2S-[(N-2-methoxyethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-
3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)
amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-methyl-butanamide;
- 40 2S-[(N-2-methoxyethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-
3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)
amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methyl-pentanamide;
- 45 2S-[(N-2-methoxyethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-
3-[(phenylsulfonyl)(2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethyl-butanamide;
- 50 2S-[(N-2-methoxyethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-
3-[(phenylsulfonyl)(2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methyl-pentanamide;
- 55 2S-[(N-2-methoxyethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-
3-[(4-methoxyphenyl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethyl-butanamide;

- 2S-[(N-2-methoxyethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-
3-[(4-methoxyphenyl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-methyl-butanamide;
- 5 2S-[(N-2-methoxyethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-
3-[(4-methoxyphenyl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methyl-pantanamide;
- 10 2S-[(N-2-methoxyethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-
3-[(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)
amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethyl-butanamide;
- 15 2S-[(N-2-methoxyethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-
3-[(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)
amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-methyl-butanamide;
- 20 2S-[(N-2-methoxyethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-
3-[(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)
amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methyl-pantanamide;
- 25 2S-[(N-2-methoxyethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-
3-[(benzothiazol-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-
1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethyl-butanamide;
- 30 2S-[(N-2-methoxyethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-
3-[(benzothiazol-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-
1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-methyl-butanamide;
- 35 2S-[(N-2-methoxyethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-
3-[(2-naphthyl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethyl-butanamide;
- 40 2S-[(N-2-methoxyethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-
3-[(2-naphthyl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3-methyl-butanamide;
- 45 2S-[(N-2-methoxyethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-
3-[(2-naphthyl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methyl-pantanamide;
- 50 2S-[(N-2-methoxyethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-
3-[(1,4-benzodioxan-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)
amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3,3-dimethyl-butanamide;
- 55 2S-[(N-2-methoxyethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-
3-[(1,4-benzodioxan-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)
amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]-3S-methyl-pantanamide;

- 2S-[(N-2-methoxyethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-
3-[(1,3-benzodioxol-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)
amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]pent-4-ynamide;
- 5 2S-[(N-2-methoxyethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-
3-[(phenylsulfonyl)(2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
(phenylmethyl)propyl]pent-4-ynamide;
- 10 2S-[(N-2-methoxyethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-
3-[(4-methoxyphenyl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
(phenylmethyl)propyl]pent-4-ynamide;
- 15 2S-[(N-2-methoxyethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-
3-[(benzothiazol-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
(phenylmethyl)propyl]pent-4-ynamide;
- 20 2S-[(N-2-methoxyethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-
3-[(2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)
amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]pent-4-ynamide;
- 25 2S-[(N-2-methoxyethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-
3-[(2-naphthyl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)amino]-1S-
(phenylmethyl)propyl]pent-4-ynamide;
- 30 2S-[(N-2-methoxyethylamino)acetyl]amino]-N-[2R-hydroxy-
3-[(1,4-benzodioxan-6-yl)sulfonyl](2-methylpropyl)
amino]-1S-(phenylmethyl)propyl]pent-4-ynamide; or

35 8. Composition comprising a compound of Claim 1 and
a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.

9. Method of inhibiting a retroviral protease
comprising administering an effective amount of a
compound of Claim 1.

40

10. Method of treating a retroviral infection
comprising administering an effective amount of a
composition of Claim 8.

45

11. Method of preventing replication of a
retrovirus comprising administering an effective amount
of a compound of Claim 1.

12. Method of preventing replication of a retrovirus *in vitro* comprising administering an effective amount of a compound of Claim 1.

5 13. Method of treating AIDS comprising administering an effective amount of a composition of Claim 8.

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Inte onal Application No
PCT/US 96/02685

A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER
IPC 6 C07K5/062 A61K38/55

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

B. FIELDS SEARCHED

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)
IPC 6 C07K A61K

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practical, search terms used)

C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category *	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
X	<p>WO,A,95 06030 (SEARLE & CO ;MONSANTO CO (US); VAZQUEZ MICHAEL L (US); MUELLER RIC) 2 March 1995 see table 4, compound 52 see claims; examples 12B-12F; tables 3,13,14,14A see table 5, compounds 16-19, 22, 28,29 see table 12, compounds 12-17 ---</p> <p>WO,A,94 04492 (SEARLE & CO ;MONSANTO CO (US); VAZQUEZ MICHAEL L (US); MUELLER RIC) 3 March 1994 see table 3, compounds 6, 8-11 see examples 12B-12F; tables 13,14 see table 4, compound 52 see table 5, compounds 7, 16-19, 28, 29 see table 12, compounds 12-17 ---</p> <p>-/-</p>	1-6,8-13 1-6,8-13
X		

Further documents are listed in the continuation of box C.

Patent family members are listed in annex.

* Special categories of cited documents :

- *'A' document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance
- *'E' earlier document but published on or after the international filing date
- *'L' document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)
- *'O' document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means
- *'P' document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed

*'T' later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention

*'X' document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone

*'Y' document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art.

*'a' document member of the same patent family

2

Date of the actual completion of the international search

25 June 1996

Date of mailing of the international search report

25.07.96

Name and mailing address of the ISA

European Patent Office, P.B. 5818 Patentlaan 2
NL - 2280 HV Rijswijk
Tel. (+ 31-70) 340-2040, Tx. 31 651 epo nl.
Fax (+ 31-70) 340-3016

Authorized officer

Fuhr, C

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No

PCT/US 96/02685

C.(Continuation) DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
X	WO,A,94 10134 (SEARLE & CO ;MONSANTO CO (US); VAZQUEZ MICHAEL L (US); MUELLER RIC) 11 May 1994 see claims; tables 5,12,13 ---	1-6,8-13
P,X	WO,A,95 33464 (SEARLE & CO ;BRYANT MARTIN L (US); POTTS KAREN E (US); SMIDT MARY) 14 December 1995 see claims; example 16 ---	1-6,8-13
A	WO,A,94 05639 (VERTEX PHARMA ;TUNG ROGER D (US); MURCKO MARK A (US); BHISSETTI GOV) 17 March 1994 see claims; examples ----	1-6,8-13
A	WO,A,94 04493 (SEARLE & CO ;MONSANTO CO (US); VAZQUEZ MICHAEL L (US); MUELLER RIC) 3 March 1994 see claims; examples -----	1-6,8-13

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Information on patent family members

International Application No

PCT/US 96/02685

Patent document cited in search report	Publication date	Patent family member(s)		Publication date
WO-A-9506030	02-03-95	AU-B- EP-A-	7669794 0715618	21-03-95 12-06-96
WO-A-9404492	03-03-94	AU-B- CA-A- EP-A- FI-A- JP-T- NO-A-	5347494 2140929 0656887 950650 8501288 950533	15-03-94 26-02-94 14-06-95 14-02-95 13-02-96 13-02-95
WO-A-9410134	11-05-94	AU-B- CA-A- EP-A-	5547094 2142997 0666842	24-05-94 11-05-94 16-08-95
WO-A-9533464	14-12-95	AU-B-	2651095	04-01-96
WO-A-9405639	17-03-94	AP-A- AU-B- BG-A- CA-A- CN-A- CZ-A- EP-A- FI-A- HU-A- JP-T- LT-A,B NO-A- PL-A- SK-A-	390 4852093 99540 2143208 1087347 9500587 0659181 951059 71892 8501299 917 950876 307858 29395	02-08-95 29-03-94 30-11-95 17-03-94 01-06-94 13-12-95 28-06-95 18-04-95 28-02-96 13-02-96 25-11-94 08-05-95 26-06-95 13-09-95
WO-A-9404493	03-03-94	AU-B- AU-B- CA-A- EP-A- FI-A- JP-T- NO-A- US-A- US-A-	669223 5082093 2140928 0656888 950651 8500825 950550 5521219 5508294	30-05-96 15-03-94 26-02-94 14-06-95 14-02-95 30-01-96 14-02-95 28-05-96 16-04-96

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.

PCT/US 96/02685

Box I Observations where certain claims were found unsearchable (Continuation of item 1 of first sheet)

This international search report has not been established in respect of certain claims under Article 17(2)(a) for the following reasons:

1. Claims Nos.: because they relate to subject matter not required to be searched by this Authority, namely:
Remark: As far as claims 9-11, 13 are directed to an in vivo method of treatment of the human/animal body the search has been carried out and based on the alleged effects of the compound/composition.
2. Claims Nos.: because they relate to parts of the international application that do not comply with the prescribed requirements to such an extent that no meaningful international search can be carried out, specifically:
3. Claims Nos.: because they are dependent claims and are not drafted in accordance with the second and third sentences of Rule 6.4(a).

Box II Observations where unity of invention is lacking (Continuation of item 2 of first sheet)

This International Searching Authority found multiple inventions in this international application, as follows:

1. As all required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this international search report covers all searchable claims.
2. As all searchable claims could be searched without effort justifying an additional fee, this Authority did not invite payment of any additional fee.
3. As only some of the required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this international search report covers only those claims for which fees were paid, specifically claims Nos.:
4. No required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant. Consequently, this international search report is restricted to the invention first mentioned in the claims; it is covered by claims Nos.:

Remark on Protest

- The additional search fees were accompanied by the applicant's protest.
- No protest accompanied the payment of additional search fees.

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Information on patent family members

International Application No

PCT/US 96/02685

Patent document cited in search report	Publication date	Patent family member(s)	Publication date
WO-A-9404493	US-A- 5510388	-----	23-04-96

**This Page is Inserted by IFW Indexing and Scanning
Operations and is not part of the Official Record**

BEST AVAILABLE IMAGES

Defective images within this document are accurate representations of the original documents submitted by the applicant.

Defects in the images include but are not limited to the items checked:

- BLACK BORDERS**
- IMAGE CUT OFF AT TOP, BOTTOM OR SIDES**
- FADED TEXT OR DRAWING**
- BLURRED OR ILLEGIBLE TEXT OR DRAWING**
- SKEWED/SLANTED IMAGES**
- COLOR OR BLACK AND WHITE PHOTOGRAPHS**
- GRAY SCALE DOCUMENTS**
- LINES OR MARKS ON ORIGINAL DOCUMENT**
- REFERENCE(S) OR EXHIBIT(S) SUBMITTED ARE POOR QUALITY**
- OTHER:** _____

IMAGES ARE BEST AVAILABLE COPY.

As rescanning these documents will not correct the image problems checked, please do not report these problems to the IFW Image Problem Mailbox.